

User's Guide

WAX650S

802.11 ax (WiFi 6) Dual-Radio Unified Pro Access Point

Default Login Details

| | |
|----------------|--|
| LAN IP Address | DHCP-assigned OR http://192.168.1.2 |
| User Name | admin |
| Password | 1234 |

Version 6.00 Edition 1, 09/2019



DRAFT

IMPORTANT!

READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.

KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

This is a User's Guide for a series of products. Not all products support all firmware features. Screenshots and graphics in this book may differ slightly from your product due to differences in your product hardware, firmware, or your computer operating system. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate.

Some screens or options in this book may not be available for your product (see the product feature tables in [Section 1.1 on page 13](#)).

Related Documentation

- Quick Start Guide
The Quick Start Guide shows how to connect the Zyxel Device and access the Web Configurator.
- CLI Reference Guide
The CLI Reference Guide explains how to use the Command-Line Interface (CLI) and CLI commands to configure the Zyxel Device.

Note: It is recommended you use the Web Configurator to configure the Zyxel Device.

- Web Configurator Online Help
Click the help icon in any screen for help in configuring that screen and supplementary information.
- Nebula Control Center User's Guide
This User's Guide shows how to manage the Zyxel Device remotely. The features of these devices can be managed through Nebula Control Center. It also offers features that are not available when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode (see [Section 2.1.2 on page 24](#)).
- NXC Series User's Guide
See this User's Guide for instructions on using the NXC as an AP Controller (AC) for the Zyxel Device. This is used when the Zyxel Device is set to be managed by a Zyxel AC.
- More Information
Go to support.zyxel.com to find other information on the Zyxel Device.



Document Conventions

Warnings and Notes

These are how warnings and notes are shown in this guide.

Warnings tell you about things that could harm you or your device.

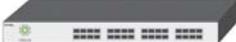
Note: Notes tell you other important information (for example, other things you may need to configure or helpful tips) or recommendations.

Syntax Conventions

- All models in this series may be referred to as the “Zyxel Device” in this guide.
- Product labels, screen names, field labels and field choices are all in **bold** font.
- A right angle bracket (>) within a screen name denotes a mouse click. For example, **Configuration > Network > IP Setting** means you first click **Configuration** in the navigation panel, then the **Network** sub menu and finally the **IP Setting** tab to get to that screen.

Icons Used in Figures

Figures in this guide may use the following generic icons. The Zyxel Device icon is not an exact representation of your device.

| | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| Zyxel Device  | Router  | Switch  | Internet  |
| Server  | Desktop  | Laptop  | AP Controller  |
| Printer  | Nebula Switch  | Nebula Gateway  | Smart T.V.  |
| IP Phone  | | | |

Contents Overview

| | |
|--|------------|
| Introduction | 13 |
| AP Management | 24 |
| Hardware | 33 |
| The Web Configurator | 52 |
| Standalone Configuration | 65 |
| Standalone Configuration | 66 |
| Dashboard | 68 |
| Setup Wizard | 74 |
| Monitor | 80 |
| Network | 95 |
| Wireless | 106 |
| Bluetooth | 121 |
| User | 124 |
| AP Profile | 131 |
| MON Profile | 151 |
| WDS Profile | 154 |
| Certificates | 156 |
| System | 173 |
| Log and Report | 196 |
| File Manager | 208 |
| Diagnostics | 219 |
| LEDs | 221 |
| Antenna Switch | 224 |
| Reboot | 226 |
| Shutdown | 227 |
| Local Configuration in Cloud Mode | 228 |
| Cloud Mode | 229 |
| Dashboard | 230 |
| Network | 232 |
| Appendices and Troubleshooting | 235 |
| Troubleshooting | 236 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Document Conventions | 3 |
| Contents Overview | 4 |
| Table of Contents | 5 |
| Chapter 1 | |
| Introduction | 13 |
| 1.1 Overview | 13 |
| 1.2 Zyxel Device Roles | 13 |
| 1.2.1 Root AP | 14 |
| 1.2.2 Wireless Repeater | 14 |
| 1.2.3 Radio Frequency (RF) Monitor | 15 |
| 1.3 Sample Feature Applications | 17 |
| 1.3.1 MBSSID | 17 |
| 1.3.2 Dual-Radio | 18 |
| 1.4 Zyxel Device Product Feature Comparison | 19 |
| Chapter 2 | |
| AP Management..... | 24 |
| 2.1 Management Mode | 24 |
| 2.1.1 Standalone | 24 |
| 2.1.2 Nebula Control Center | 24 |
| 2.1.3 AP Controller (AC) | 25 |
| 2.2 Switching Management Modes | 26 |
| 2.3 Zyxel One Network (ZON) Utility | 27 |
| 2.3.1 Requirements | 27 |
| 2.3.2 Run the ZON Utility | 27 |
| 2.4 Ways to Access the Zyxel Device | 31 |
| 2.5 Good Habits for Managing the Zyxel Device | 32 |
| Chapter 3 | |
| Hardware | 33 |
| 3.1 Grounding (WAC6552D-S and WAC6553D-E) | 33 |
| 3.2 Zyxel Device Models With Single LEDs | 34 |
| 3.2.1 NWA1123-ACv2 | 34 |
| 3.2.2 WAC6303D-S and NWA5123-AC HD | 36 |
| 3.2.3 NWA1123-AC HD | 37 |
| 3.2.4 NWA5123-AC | 39 |
| 3.2.5 NWA1123AX, WAX510D and WAX650S | 40 |

| | |
|--|-----------|
| 3.3 Zyxel Device Models With Multiple LEDs | 42 |
| 3.3.1 NWA1123-AC PRO | 42 |
| 3.3.2 NWA1302-AC | 44 |
| 3.3.3 WAC6502D-E, WAC6502D-S, and WAC6503D-S | 45 |
| 3.3.4 WAC6103D-I | 47 |
| 3.3.5 WAC5302D-S | 49 |
| Chapter 4 | |
| The Web Configurator..... | 52 |
| 4.1 Overview | 52 |
| 4.2 Accessing the Web Configurator | 52 |
| 4.3 Navigating the Web Configurator | 54 |
| 4.3.1 Title Bar | 56 |
| 4.3.2 Navigation Panel | 58 |
| 4.3.3 Standalone Mode Navigation Panel Menus | 59 |
| 4.3.4 Cloud Mode Navigation Panel Menus | 61 |
| 4.3.5 Tables and Lists | 62 |
| | |
| Part I: Standalone Configuration | 65 |
| | |
| Chapter 5 | |
| Standalone Configuration..... | 66 |
| 5.1 Overview | 66 |
| 5.2 Starting and Stopping the Zyxel Device | 66 |
| | |
| Chapter 6 | |
| Dashboard..... | 68 |
| 6.0.1 CPU Usage | 71 |
| 6.0.2 Memory Usage | 72 |
| | |
| Chapter 7 | |
| Setup Wizard..... | 74 |
| 7.1 Accessing the Wizard | 74 |
| 7.2 Using the Wizard | 74 |
| 7.2.1 Step 1 Time Settings | 74 |
| 7.2.2 Step 2 Password and Uplink Connection | 75 |
| 7.2.3 Step 3 Radio | 76 |
| 7.2.4 Step 4 SSID | 77 |
| 7.2.5 Summary | 79 |
| | |
| Chapter 8 | |
| Monitor..... | 80 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| 8.1 Overview | 80 |
| 8.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 80 |
| 8.2 What You Need to Know | 80 |
| 8.3 Network Status | 81 |
| 8.3.1 Port Statistics Graph | 82 |
| 8.4 Radio List | 83 |
| 8.4.1 AP Mode Radio Information | 85 |
| 8.5 Station List | 87 |
| 8.6 WDS Link Info | 88 |
| 8.7 Detected Device | 89 |
| 8.8 View Log | 92 |
| Chapter 9 | |
| Network..... | 95 |
| 9.1 Overview | 95 |
| 9.1.1 AP Controller Management | 95 |
| 9.1.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 97 |
| 9.2 IP Setting | 98 |
| 9.3 VLAN | 99 |
| 9.4 Storm Control | 102 |
| 9.5 AC (AP Controller) Discovery | 103 |
| 9.6 NCC Discovery | 104 |
| Chapter 10 | |
| Wireless | 106 |
| 10.1 Overview | 106 |
| 10.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 106 |
| 10.1.2 What You Need to Know | 107 |
| 10.2 AP Management | 107 |
| 10.3 Rogue AP | 110 |
| 10.3.1 Add/Edit Rogue/Friendly List | 114 |
| 10.4 Load Balancing | 115 |
| 10.4.1 Disassociating and Delaying Connections | 116 |
| 10.5 DCS | 117 |
| 10.6 Technical Reference | 118 |
| Chapter 11 | |
| Bluetooth..... | 121 |
| 11.1 Overview | 121 |
| 11.1.1 What You Need To Know | 121 |
| 11.2 Bluetooth Advertising Settings | 122 |
| 11.2.1 Edit Advertising Settings | 122 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Chapter 12 | |
| User | 124 |
| 12.1 Overview | 124 |
| 12.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 124 |
| 12.1.2 What You Need To Know | 124 |
| 12.2 User Summary | 125 |
| 12.2.1 Add/Edit User | 125 |
| 12.3 Setting | 127 |
| 12.3.1 Edit User Authentication Timeout Settings | 129 |
| Chapter 13 | |
| AP Profile | 131 |
| 13.1 Overview | 131 |
| 13.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 131 |
| 13.1.2 What You Need To Know | 131 |
| 13.2 Radio | 132 |
| 13.2.1 Add/Edit Radio Profile | 133 |
| 13.3 SSID | 138 |
| 13.3.1 SSID List | 139 |
| 13.3.2 Add/Edit SSID Profile | 140 |
| 13.4 Security List | 142 |
| 13.4.1 Add/Edit Security Profile | 143 |
| 13.5 MAC Filter List | 147 |
| 13.5.1 Add/Edit MAC Filter Profile | 147 |
| 13.6 Layer-2 Isolation List | 148 |
| 13.6.1 Add/Edit Layer-2 Isolation Profile | 150 |
| Chapter 14 | |
| MON Profile | 151 |
| 14.1 Overview | 151 |
| 14.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 151 |
| 14.2 MON Profile | 151 |
| 14.2.1 Add/Edit MON Profile | 152 |
| Chapter 15 | |
| WDS Profile | 154 |
| 15.1 Overview | 154 |
| 15.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 154 |
| 15.2 WDS Profile | 154 |
| 15.2.1 Add/Edit WDS Profile | 155 |
| Chapter 16 | |
| Certificates | 156 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| 16.1 Overview | 156 |
| 16.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 156 |
| 16.1.2 What You Need to Know | 156 |
| 16.1.3 Verifying a Certificate | 158 |
| 16.2 My Certificates | 159 |
| 16.2.1 Add My Certificates | 160 |
| 16.2.2 Edit My Certificates | 162 |
| 16.2.3 Import Certificates | 165 |
| 16.3 Trusted Certificates | 166 |
| 16.3.1 Edit Trusted Certificates | 167 |
| 16.3.2 Import Trusted Certificates | 171 |
| 16.4 Technical Reference | 172 |
| Chapter 17 | |
| System..... | 173 |
| 17.1 Overview | 173 |
| 17.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 173 |
| 17.2 Host Name | 173 |
| 17.3 Power Mode | 174 |
| 17.4 Date and Time | 175 |
| 17.4.1 Pre-defined NTP Time Servers List | 177 |
| 17.4.2 Time Server Synchronization | 177 |
| 17.5 WWW Overview | 178 |
| 17.5.1 Service Access Limitations | 178 |
| 17.5.2 System Timeout | 178 |
| 17.5.3 HTTPS | 179 |
| 17.5.4 Configuring WWW Service Control | 179 |
| 17.5.5 HTTPS Example | 180 |
| 17.6 SSH | 186 |
| 17.6.1 How SSH Works | 187 |
| 17.6.2 SSH Implementation on the Zyxel Device | 188 |
| 17.6.3 Requirements for Using SSH | 188 |
| 17.6.4 Configuring SSH | 188 |
| 17.6.5 Examples of Secure Telnet Using SSH | 189 |
| 17.7 Telnet | 190 |
| 17.8 FTP | 191 |
| 17.9 SNMP | 192 |
| 17.9.1 Supported MIBs | 193 |
| 17.9.2 SNMP Traps | 193 |
| 17.9.3 Configuring SNMP | 193 |
| 17.9.4 Adding or Editing an SNMPv3 User Profile | 194 |
| Chapter 18 | |
| Log and Report..... | 196 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| 18.1 Overview | 196 |
| 18.1.1 What You Can Do In this Chapter | 196 |
| 18.2 Email Daily Report | 196 |
| 18.3 Log Setting | 198 |
| 18.3.1 Log Setting Screen | 199 |
| 18.3.2 Edit System Log Settings | 200 |
| 18.3.3 Edit Remote Server | 204 |
| 18.3.4 Active Log Summary | 205 |
| Chapter 19 | |
| File Manager | 208 |
| 19.1 Overview | 208 |
| 19.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 208 |
| 19.1.2 What you Need to Know | 208 |
| 19.2 Configuration File | 209 |
| 19.2.1 Example of Configuration File Download Using FTP | 213 |
| 19.3 Firmware Package | 214 |
| 19.3.1 Example of Firmware Upload Using FTP | 215 |
| 19.4 Shell Script | 216 |
| Chapter 20 | |
| Diagnostics | 219 |
| 20.1 Overview | 219 |
| 20.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 219 |
| 20.2 Diagnostics | 219 |
| Chapter 21 | |
| LEDs | 221 |
| 21.1 Overview | 221 |
| 21.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 221 |
| 21.2 Suppression Screen | 221 |
| 21.3 Locator Screen | 222 |
| Chapter 22 | |
| Antenna Switch | 224 |
| 22.1 Overview | 224 |
| 22.1.1 What You Need To Know | 224 |
| 22.2 Antenna Switch Screen | 224 |
| Chapter 23 | |
| Reboot..... | 226 |
| 23.1 Overview | 226 |
| 23.1.1 What You Need To Know | 226 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| 23.2 Reboot | 226 |
| Chapter 24 | |
| Shutdown | 227 |
| 24.1 Overview | 227 |
| 24.1.1 What You Need To Know | 227 |
| 24.2 Shutdown | 227 |
| | |
| Part II: Local Configuration in Cloud Mode | 228 |
| | |
| Chapter 25 | |
| Cloud Mode | 229 |
| 25.1 Overview | 229 |
| 25.2 Cloud Mode Web Configurator Screens | 229 |
| | |
| Chapter 26 | |
| Dashboard | 230 |
| | |
| Chapter 27 | |
| Network | 232 |
| 27.1 Overview | 232 |
| 27.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter | 232 |
| 27.2 IP Setting | 232 |
| 27.3 VLAN | 234 |
| | |
| Part III: Appendices and Troubleshooting | 235 |
| | |
| Chapter 28 | |
| Troubleshooting | 236 |
| 28.1 Overview | 236 |
| 28.2 Power, Hardware Connections, and LED | 236 |
| 28.3 Zyxel Device Management, Access, and Login | 237 |
| 28.4 Internet Access | 241 |
| 28.5 WiFi Network | 242 |
| 28.6 Resetting the Zyxel Device | 243 |
| 28.7 Getting More Troubleshooting Help | 244 |
| | |
| Appendix A Importing Certificates | 245 |
| Appendix B IPv6 | 269 |
| Appendix C Customer Support | 277 |

Appendix D Legal Information 283

Index 296

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

1.1 Overview

This User's Guide covers the models listed in the following table. They can be managed in one of the following methods: remote management through Nebula Control Center (NCC) or an AP Controller (AC) such as the NXC, or local management in Standalone Mode. Each Zyxel Device runs in standalone mode by default, but it is recommended to use NCC management if it is available for your device.

| NCC, AC or Standalone (NebulaFlex PRO) | NCC or Standalone (NebulaFlex) | AC or Standalone |
|--|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">• NWA5123-AC HD• WAC6103D-I• WAC6303D-S• WAC6502D-E• WAC6502D-S• WAC6503D-S• WAC6552D-S• WAC6553D-E• WAX510D• WAX650S | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• NWA1123-ACv2• NWA1123-AC PRO• NWA1123-AC HD• NWA1302-AC• NWA1123AX | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• NWA5123-AC• WAC5302D-S |

For more information about Access Point (AP) management, see [Section 2.1 on page 24](#).

Use the Zyxel Device to set up a wireless network with other IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n/ac/ax compatible devices in either 2.4GHz and 5GHz networks or both at the same time.

When two or more APs are interconnected, this network is called a Wireless Distribution System (WDS). See [Section 1.2.2 on page 14](#) for more information on root and repeater APs and how to set them up.

1.2 Zyxel Device Roles

This section describes some of the different roles that your Zyxel Device can take up within a network. Not all roles are supported by all models (see [Section 1.4 on page 19](#)). The Zyxel Device can serve as a:

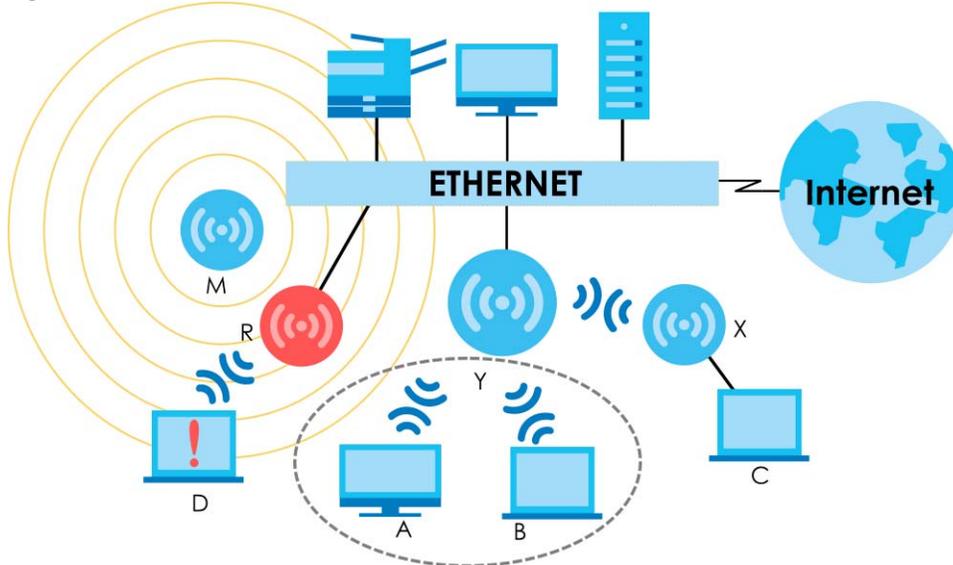
- Access Point (AP) - This is used to allow wireless clients to connect to the Internet.
- Radio Frequency (RF) monitor - An RF monitor searches for rogue APs to help eliminate network threats if it supports monitor mode and rogue APs detection/containment. An RF monitor cannot simultaneously act as an AP.
- Root AP - A root AP connects to the gateway or switch through a wired Ethernet connection and has wireless repeaters connected to it to extend its range.

- Wireless repeater - A wireless repeater wirelessly connects to a root AP and extends the network's wireless range.

The following figure shows a network setup that uses these different roles to create a secure Wireless Distribution System (WDS). The root AP (Y) is connected to a network with Internet access and has a wireless repeater (X) connected to it to expand the wireless network's range. Clients (A, B, and C) can access the wired network through the wireless repeater and/or root AP.

If a client (D) tries to set up his own AP (R) with weak security settings, the network becomes exposed to threats. The RF monitor (M) scans the area to detect all APs, which can help the network administrator discover these rogue APs and remove them or use the NXC to quarantine them.

Figure 1 Sample Network Setup



1.2.1 Root AP

In Root AP mode, you can have multiple SSIDs active for regular wireless connections and one SSID for the connection with a repeater (repeater SSID). Wireless clients can use either SSID to associate with the Zyxel Device in Root AP mode. A repeater must use the repeater SSID to connect to the Zyxel Device in Root AP mode.

When the Zyxel Device is in Root AP mode, repeater security between the Zyxel Device and other repeaters is independent of the security between the wireless clients and the AP or repeater. When repeater security is enabled, both APs and repeaters must use the same pre-shared key. See [Section 10.2 on page 107](#) and [Section 15.2 on page 154](#) for more details.

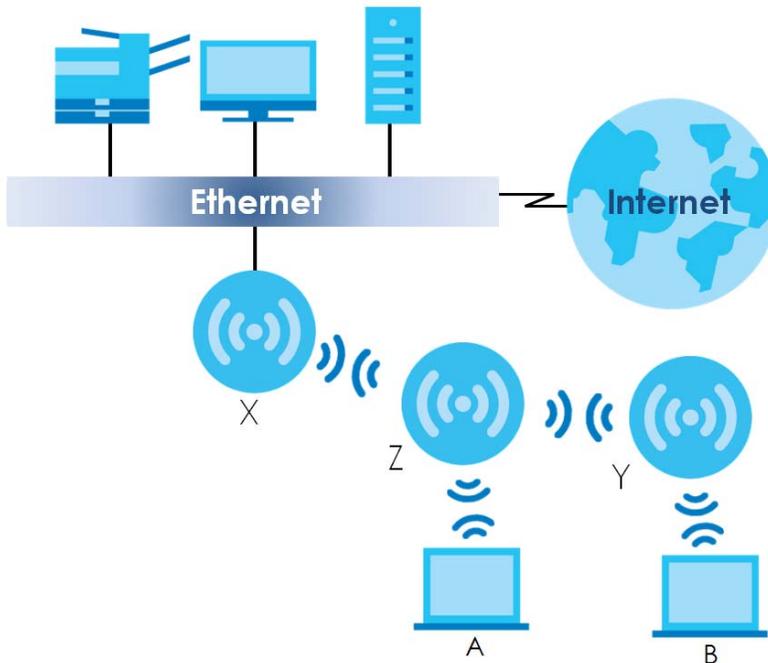
Unless specified, the term "security settings" refers to the traffic between the wireless clients and the AP. At the time of writing, repeater security is compatible with the Zyxel Device only.

1.2.2 Wireless Repeater

Using Repeater mode, your Zyxel Device can extend the range of the WLAN. In the figure below, the Zyxel Device in Repeater mode (Z) has a wireless connection to the Zyxel Device in Root AP mode (X) which is connected to a wired network and also has a wireless connection to another Zyxel Device in Repeater mode (Y) at the same time. Z and Y act as repeaters that forward traffic between associated

wireless clients and the wired LAN. Clients **A** and **B** access the AP and the wired network behind the AP through repeaters **Z** and **Y**.

Figure 2 Repeater Application



When the Zyxel Device is in Repeater mode, repeater security between the Zyxel Device and other repeater is independent of the security between the wireless clients and the AP or repeater. When repeater security is enabled, both APs and repeaters must use the same pre-shared key. See [Section 10.2 on page 107](#) and [Section 15.2 on page 154](#) for more details.

For NCC managed devices, you only need to enable **AP Smart Mesh** to automatically create wireless links between APs. See the NCC User's Guide for more details.

To set up a WDS in standalone mode APs, do the following steps. You should already have the root AP set up (see the Quick Start Guide for hardware connections).

- 1 Go to **Configuration > Object > WDS Profile** in your root AP web configurator and click **Add**.
- 2 Enter a profile name, an SSID for the WDS, and a pre-shared key.
- 3 Do steps 1 and 2 for the wireless repeater using the same SSID and pre-shared key.
- 4 Once the security settings of peer sides match one another, the connection between the root and repeater Zyxel Devices is made.

To set up a WDS in NXC managed Zyxel Devices, see the NXC User's Guide.

1.2.3 Radio Frequency (RF) Monitor

The Zyxel Device can be set to work as an RF monitor to discover nearby Access Points. The information it obtains from other APs is used to tag possible rogue APs and quarantine them if the Zyxel Device is

managed by the NXC (see [Section 2.1.3 on page 25](#)). If the Zyxel Device's radio setting is set to **MON Mode** (RF Monitor mode), it will serve as a dedicated RF monitor and its AP clients are disconnected.

The models that do not support **MON Mode** support **Rogue AP Detection** (see [Section 10.3 on page 110](#)). **Rogue AP Detection** allows the AP to scan all channels similar to **MON Mode** except that the Zyxel Device still works as an AP while it scans the environment for wireless signals. To see which Zyxel Devices support the RF Monitor feature, see [Table 1 on page 19](#) and [Table 2 on page 21](#).

The Zyxel Device in **MON Mode** scans a range of WiFi channels that you specify in a **MON Profile**, either in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band. To scan both bands, you need to set both radio 1 and radio 2 in **MON Mode**. Once a rogue AP is detected, the network administrator can manually change the network settings to limit its access to the network using its MAC address or have the device physically removed. If the Zyxel Device is managed by an NXC, the network administrator can also use **Rogue AP Containment** through the NXC.

MON Mode in Standalone Mode

To use an RF monitor in standalone mode, do the following steps:

- 1 Create a **MON Profile** in **Configuration > Object > MON Profile > Add**. Specify a **Channel dwell time** to determine how long the RF monitor scans a specific channel before moving to the next one.
- 2 To scan all 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz channels, select **auto** in **Scan Channel Mode**. Make sure that the **Activate** check box is selected and click **OK**.
- 3 Go to the **Configuration > Wireless > AP Management** screen and set **Radio 1 OP Mode** (2.4 GHz) and/or **Radio 2 OP Mode**(5 GHz) to **MON Mode**.
- 4 Select the **Radio 1(2) Profile** that you created in the previous step. Make sure that the **Radio 1(2) Activate** check box is selected and click **Apply**.
- 5 Go to **Monitor > Wireless > Detected Device** to see a list of APs scanned by the RF monitor.
- 6 Select an AP or APs in the list and click **Mark as Rogue AP** or **Mark as Friendly AP**.

MON Mode in NXC-Managed Zyxel Devices

For NXC-managed Zyxel Devices, do the following steps in the NXC web configurator:

- 1 Create a **MON Profile** in **CONFIGURATION > Object > MON Profile > Add**. Specify a **Channel dwell time** to determine how long the RF monitor scans a specific channel before moving to the next one.
- 2 To scan all 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz channels, select **auto** in **Scan Channel Mode**. Make sure that the **Activate** check box is selected and click **OK**.
- 3 Go to the **CONFIGURATION > Wireless > AP Management > Mgmt. AP List > Edit** screen and/or set **Radio 1 OP Mode** (2.4 GHz) and **Radio 2 OP Mode**(5 GHz) to **MON Mode**.
- 4 Select the **Radio 1(2) Profile** that you created in the previous step. Select **Override Group Radio Setting** and click **OK**.
- 5 Go to **MONITOR > Wireless > Detected Device** to see a list of APs scanned by the RF monitor.

- 6 Select an AP or APs in the list and click **Mark as Rogue AP** or **Mark as Friendly AP**.
- 7 To quarantine a rogue AP, go to **CONFIGURATION > Wireless > Rogue AP**, select the APs you want to quarantine, and click **Containment**. Make sure the **Enable Rogue AP Containment** check box is selected, and click **Apply**.

1.3 Sample Feature Applications

This section describes some possible scenarios and topologies that you can set up using your Zyxel Device.

1.3.1 MBSSID

A Basic Service Set (BSS) is the set of devices forming a single wireless network (usually an access point and one or more wireless clients). The Service Set IDentifier (SSID) is the name of a BSS. In Multiple BSS (MBSSID) mode, the Zyxel Device provides multiple virtual APs, each forming its own BSS and using its own individual SSID profile.

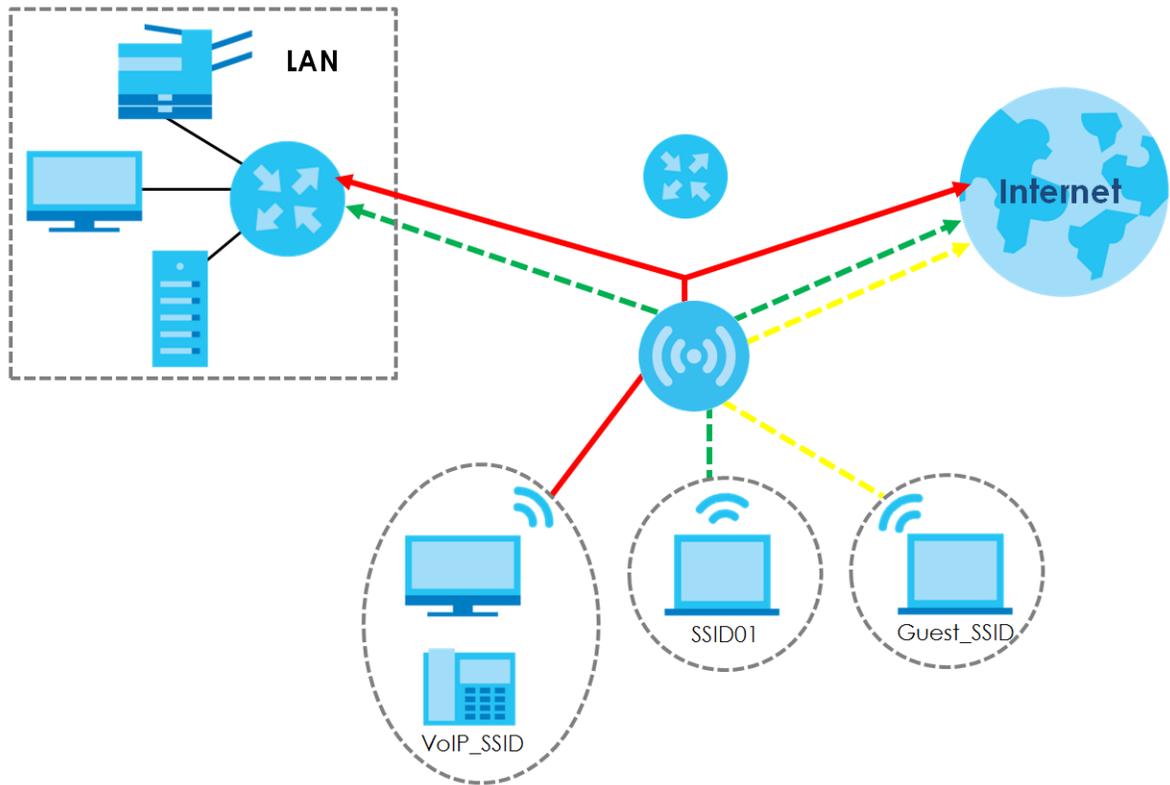
You can configure multiple SSID profiles, and have all of them active at any one time.

You can assign different wireless and security settings to each SSID profile. This allows you to compartmentalize groups of users, set varying access privileges, and prioritize network traffic to and from certain BSSs.

To the wireless clients in the network, each SSID appears to be a different access point. As in any wireless network, clients can associate only with the SSIDs for which they have the correct security settings.

For example, you might want to set up a wireless network in your office where Internet telephony (VoIP) users have priority. You also want a regular wireless network for standard users, as well as a 'guest' wireless network for visitors. In the following figure, **VoIP_SSID** users have QoS priority, **SSID01** is the wireless network for standard users, and **Guest_SSID** is the wireless network for guest users. In this example, the guest user is forbidden access to the wired Land Area Network (LAN) behind the AP and can access only the Internet.

Figure 3 Multiple BSSs



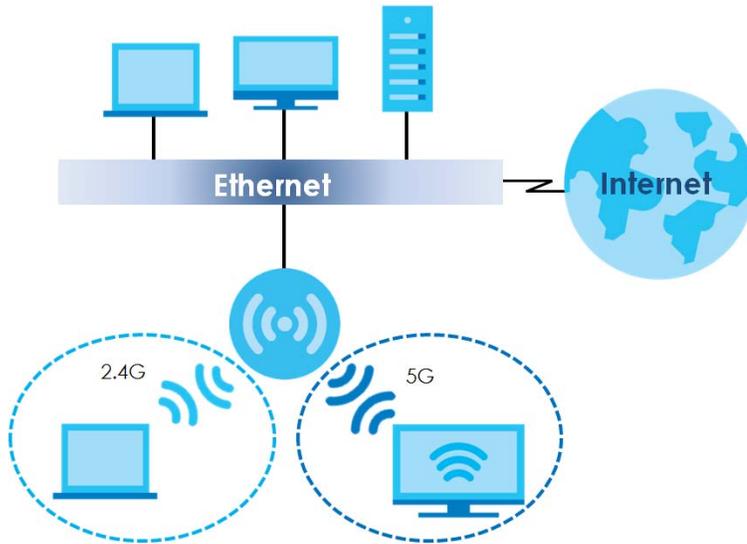
1.3.2 Dual-Radio

Some of the Zyxel Device models are equipped with dual wireless radios. This means you can configure two different wireless networks to operate simultaneously.

Note: A different channel should be configured for each WLAN interface to reduce the effects of radio interference.

You could use the 2.4 GHz band for regular Internet surfing and downloading while using the 5 GHz band for time sensitive traffic like high-definition video, music, and gaming.

Figure 4 Dual-Radio Application



1.4 Zyxel Device Product Feature Comparison

The following tables show the differences between each Zyxel Device model.

Table 1 Zyxel Device 1000/5000 Series Comparison Table

| FEATURES | NWA1123-ACv2 | NWA1123-AC PRO | NWA1123-AC HD | <u>NWA1123-AX</u> | NWA1302-AC | NWA5123-AC | NWA5123-AC HD | WAC5302 D-S | |
|------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Supported Wireless Standards | IEEE 802.11a IEEE 802.11b IEEE 802.11g IEEE 802.11n IEEE 802.11ac | IEEE 802.11a IEEE 802.11b IEEE 802.11g IEEE 802.11n IEEE 802.11ac | IEEE 802.11a IEEE 802.11b IEEE 802.11g IEEE 802.11n IEEE 802.11ac | IEEE 802.11a IEEE 802.11b IEEE 802.11g IEEE 802.11n IEEE 802.11ac <u>IEEE 802.11ax</u> | IEEE 802.11a IEEE 802.11b IEEE 802.11g IEEE 802.11n IEEE 802.11ac |
| Supported Frequency Bands | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz | |
| Available Security Modes | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX <u>Enhanced-open</u> <u>WPA3-enterprise</u> <u>WPA3-personal</u> | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX | |
| Number of SSID Profiles | 64 | 64 | 64 | 64 | 64 | 64 | 64 | 64 | |

Table 1 Zyxel Device 1000/5000 Series Comparison Table

| FEATURES | NWA1123-ACv2 | NWA1123-AC PRO | NWA1123-AC HD | <u>NWA1123 AX</u> | NWA1302-AC | NWA5123-AC | NWA5123-AC HD | WAC5302 D-S |
|---|------------------------------------|---|---------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| Number of Wireless Radios | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| Monitor Mode & Rogue APs Containment ^A | No | No | No | No | No | Yes | No | No |
| Rogue AP Detection | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) - Root AP & Repeater Modes | Yes | Yes | No | No | No | Yes | No | No |
| Tunnel Forwarding Mode | No | No | No | Yes | No | No | No | No |
| Layer-2 Isolation | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Power Detection | No | No | Yes | Yes | Yes | No | No Yes | Yes |
| External Antennas | No | No | No | No | No | No | No | No |
| Internal Antennas | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Antenna Switch | No | Yes (<u>per radio + physical switch</u>) | No | <u>No</u> | No | No | No | No |
| Console Port | 4-Pin Serial | 4-Pin Serial | 4-Pin Serial | 4-Pin Serial | 4-Pin Serial | 4-Pin Serial | 4-Pin Serial | 4-Pin Serial |
| LED Locator | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | No Yes | Yes | No Yes |
| LED Suppression | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| AC (AP Controller) Discovery | No | No | No | Yes | No | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| NebulaFlex PRO | No | No | No | Yes | No | No | Yes | No |
| NCC Discovery | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | No | Yes | No |
| 802.11r Fast Roaming Support | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) | No | No | No | Yes No | No | No | No | Yes |
| USB Port for BLE | No | No | No | No | No | No | No | Yes |
| Grounding | No | No | Yes | Yes | No | No | Yes | No |
| Maximum number of log messages | 512 event logs and 1024 debug logs | | | | | | | 256 event logs and 1 debug logs |

A. For NXC managed devices only. See the NXC User's Guide for details.

Table 2 WAC 6000 Series Comparison Table

| FEATURES | WAC6103D -I | WAC6303D -S | WAC6502D -E | WAC6502D -S | WAC6503D -S | WAC6552D -S | WAC6553D -E | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Supported Wireless Standards | IEEE 802.11a IEEE 802.11b IEEE 802.11g IEEE 802.11n IEEE 802.11ac |
| Supported Frequency Bands | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz | |
| Available Security Modes | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX |
| Number of SSID Profiles | 64 | 64 | 64 | 64 | 64 | 64 | 64 | |
| Number of Wireless Radios | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | |
| Monitor Mode & Rogue APs Containment ^A | Yes | No | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | |
| Rogue AP Detection | Yes | |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) - Root AP & Repeater Modes | Yes | No | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | |
| Tunnel Forwarding Mode | Yes | |
| Layer-2 Isolation | Yes | |
| Power Detection | No | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | |
| External Antennas | No | No | Yes | No | No | No | Yes | |
| Internal Antennas | Yes | Yes | No | Yes | Yes | Yes | No | |
| Antenna Switch | Yes (per radio + physical switch) | No | No | No | No | No | No | |
| Console Port | 4-Pin Serial | 4-Pin Serial | RJ-45 serial | |
| LED Locator | Yes | |
| LED Suppression | Yes | |
| AC (AP Controller) Discovery | Yes | |
| NebulaFlex PRO | Yes | |
| NCC Discovery | Yes | |
| 802.11r Fast Roaming Support | Yes | |
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming | Yes | |
| Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) | No | Yes | No | No | No | No | No | |

Table 2 WAC 6000 Series Comparison Table

| FEATURES | WAC6103D -I | WAC6303D -S | WAC6502D -E | WAC6502D -S | WAC6503D -S | WAC6552D -S | WAC6553D -E |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| USB Port for BLE | No | No | No | No | No | No | No |
| Grounding | No | Yes | Yes | Yes | No | Yes | Yes |
| Maximum number of log messages | 512 event logs and 1024 debug logs | | | | | | |

A. For NXC managed devices only. See the NXC User's Guide for details.

Table 3 WAX 500/600 Series Comparison Table

| FEATURES | WAX510D | WAX650S |
|---|--|--|
| Supported Wireless Standards | IEEE 802.11a IEEE 802.11b IEEE 802.11g IEEE 802.11n IEEE 802.11ac IEEE 802.11ax | IEEE 802.11a IEEE 802.11b IEEE 802.11g IEEE 802.11n IEEE 802.11ac IEEE 802.11ax |
| Supported Frequency Bands | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz | 2.4 GHz 5 GHz |
| Available Security Modes | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX Enhanced-open WPA3-enterprise WPA3-personal | None WEP WPA2 WPA2-MIX WPA2-PSK WPA2-PSK-MIX Enhanced-open WPA3-enterprise WPA3-personal |
| Number of SSID Profiles | 64 | 64 |
| Number of Wireless Radios | 2 | 2 |
| Monitor Mode & Rogue APs Containment ^A | Yes No | No |
| Rogue AP Detection | Yes | Yes |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) - Root AP & Repeater Modes | Yes No | No |
| Tunnel Forwarding Mode | Yes | Yes |
| Layer-2 Isolation | Yes | Yes |
| Power Detection | No Yes | Yes |
| External Antennas | No | No |
| Internal Antennas | Yes | Yes |
| Antenna Switch | Yes (per AP) | No |
| Console Port | 4-Pin Serial | 4-Pin Serial |
| LED Locator | Yes | Yes |
| LED Suppression | Yes | Yes |
| AC (AP Controller) Discovery | Yes | Yes |
| NebulaFlex PRO | Yes | Yes |
| NCC Discovery | Yes | Yes |
| 802.11r Fast Roaming Support | Yes | Yes |

Table 3 [WAX 500/600 Series](#) Comparison Table

| FEATURES | WAX510D | WAX650S |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------|
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming | Yes | Yes |
| Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) | No | Yes |
| USB Port for BLE | No | No |
| Grounding | No Yes | Yes |
| Maximum number of log messages | 512 event logs and 1024 debug logs | |

A. For NXC managed devices only. See the NXC User's Guide for details.

CHAPTER 2

AP Management

2.1 Management Mode

The Zyxel Device is a unified AP and can be managed by the NCC or an AP controller (AC), or work as a standalone device. We recommend you use NCC to manage multiple APs (see the NCC User's Guide). An AP Controller such as the NXC can only manage multiple APs in the same location.

Note: Not all models can be managed by NCC or an AC. See [Section 1.1 on page 13](#) to check whether your product supports these.

The following table shows the default IP addresses and firmware upload methods for different management modes.

Table 4 Zyxel Device Management Mode Comparison

| MANAGEMENT MODE | DEFAULT IP ADDRESS | UPLOAD FIRMWARE VIA |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Nebula Control Center | Dynamic | NCC Portal |
| AP Controller | Dynamic | AP Controller using CAPWAP |
| Standalone | Dynamic or Static (192.168.1.2) | Built-in Web Configurator |

When the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode and connects to a DHCP server, it uses the IP address assigned by the DHCP server. Otherwise, the Zyxel Device uses the default static management IP address (192.168.1.2). You can use the **NCC Discovery** or **AC Discovery** screen to allow the Zyxel Device to be managed by the NCC or an AC, respectively.

When the Zyxel Device is managed by the NCC or an AC, it acts as a DHCP client and obtains an IP address from the NCC/AC. It can be configured ONLY by the NCC/AC. To change the Zyxel Device back to standalone mode, use the **Reset** button to restore the default configuration. Alternatively, you need to check the NCC/AC for the Zyxel Device's IP address and use FTP to upload the default configuration file at `conf/system-default.conf` to the Zyxel Device and reboot the device.

2.1.1 Standalone

When working in standalone mode, the Zyxel Device is configured mainly with its built-in web configurator. You can only connect to and set up one Zyxel Device at a time in this mode.

See [Chapter 5 on page 66](#) for detailed information about the standalone web configurator screens.

2.1.2 Nebula Control Center

In this mode, which is also called cloud mode, you can manage and monitor the Zyxel Device through the Zyxel Nebula cloud-based network management system. This means you can manage devices remotely without the need of connecting to each device directly. It offers many features to better manage and monitor not just the Zyxel Device, but your network as a whole, including supported

switches and gateways. Your network can also be managed through your smartphone using the Nebula Mobile app. See [Section 25.1 on page 229](#) for an example NCC managed network topology.

NCC allows different levels of management. You can configure each device on its own or configure a set of devices together as a site. You can also monitor groups of sites called organizations, as shown below.

Table 5 NCC management levels

| Organization | | | |
|--------------|------------|------------|------------|
| Site A | | Site B | |
| Device A-1 | Device A-2 | Device B-1 | Device B-2 |

It graphically presents your device/network statistics and shows an overview of your network topology, as shown in the following figure. It also sends reports, alerts, and notifications for events, such as when a site goes offline.

Figure 5 Traffic monitoring graph from NCC



See the NCC (Nebula Control Center) User's Guide for how to configure Nebula managed devices. See [Chapter 27 on page 232](#) if you want to change the Zyxel Device's VLAN setting or manually set its IP address.

Note: Make sure your network firewall allows TCP ports 443, 4335, and 6667 as well as UDP port 123 so the device can connect to and sync with the NCC.

2.1.3 AP Controller (AC)

If the Zyxel Device supports management using an AC (see [Section 9.1.1 on page 95](#)) such as the NXC2500 or NXC5500, and you have this AC in the same subnet, it will be managed by the controller automatically. To set the Zyxel Device to be managed by an AC in a different subnet or change between management modes, use the **AC Discovery** screen (see [Section 9.5 on page 103](#) and [Section 9.1.1 on page 95](#)). You can use the AC to manage multiple Zyxel Devices. See [Section 9.1.1 on page 95](#) for an example AC managed network topology.

Note: If the Zyxel Device is already registered to NCC, the controller will be unable to manage it.

An AC uses Control And Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP, see RFC 5415) to discover and configure multiple managed APs.

2.2 Switching Management Modes

The Zyxel Device is in standalone mode by default with NCC and/or AC discovery enabled,

Standalone-to-NCC

Register the Zyxel Device at the NCC website and then turn on the Zyxel Device. Make sure that **NCC Discovery** is enabled (see [Section 9.6 on page 104](#)). The NCC manages the Zyxel Device automatically when it is discovered.

Standalone-to-AC (NXC)

By default, the Zyxel Device must be in the same subnet as the NXC. See [Section 9.1.1 on page 95](#) for setting it up in a different subnet. Make sure **AC Discovery** is enabled (see [Section 9.5 on page 103](#)). The NXC manages the Zyxel Device automatically when it is discovered.

NXC-to-NCC

Register the Zyxel Device at the NCC website. Make sure that **NCC Discovery** is enabled on your Zyxel Device (see [Section 9.6 on page 104](#)). In the NXC web configurator, select the Zyxel Device and press the **Nebula** button. The NCC manages the Zyxel Device automatically when it is discovered.

NCC-to-NXC

Unregister the Zyxel Device at the NCC portal. By default, the Zyxel Device must be in the same subnet as the NXC. See [Section 9.1.1 on page 95](#) for setting it up in a different subnet. Make sure **AC Discovery** is enabled (see [Section 9.5 on page 103](#)). The NXC manages the Zyxel Device automatically when it is discovered.

NCC-to-Standalone

Unregister the Zyxel Device from the NCC organization/site. Reset the Zyxel Device to factory defaults (see [Section 28.6 on page 243](#)).

AC-to-Standalone

Use the **Reset** button to return the Zyxel Device to its factory default settings (see [Section 28.6 on page 243](#)).

2.3 Zyxel One Network (ZON) Utility

ZON Utility is a program designed to help you deploy and manage a network more efficiently. It detects devices automatically and allows you to do basic settings on devices in the network without having to be near it.

The ZON Utility issues requests via Zyxel Discovery Protocol (ZDP) and in response to the query, the device responds back with basic information including IP address, firmware version, location, system and model name in the same broadcast domain. The information is then displayed in the ZON Utility screen and you can perform tasks like basic configuration of the devices and batch firmware upgrade in it. You can download the ZON Utility at www.zyxel.com and install it on your computer (Windows operating system).

2.3.1 Requirements

Before installing the ZON Utility on your PC, please make sure it meets the requirements listed below.

Operating System

At the time of writing, the ZON Utility is compatible with:

- Windows 7 (both 32-bit / 64-bit versions)
- Windows 8 (both 32-bit / 64-bit versions)
- Windows 8.1 (both 32-bit / 64-bit versions)
- Windows 10 (both 32-bit / 64-bit versions)

Note: To check for your Windows operating system version, right-click on **My Computer > Properties**. You should see this information in the **General** tab.

Hardware

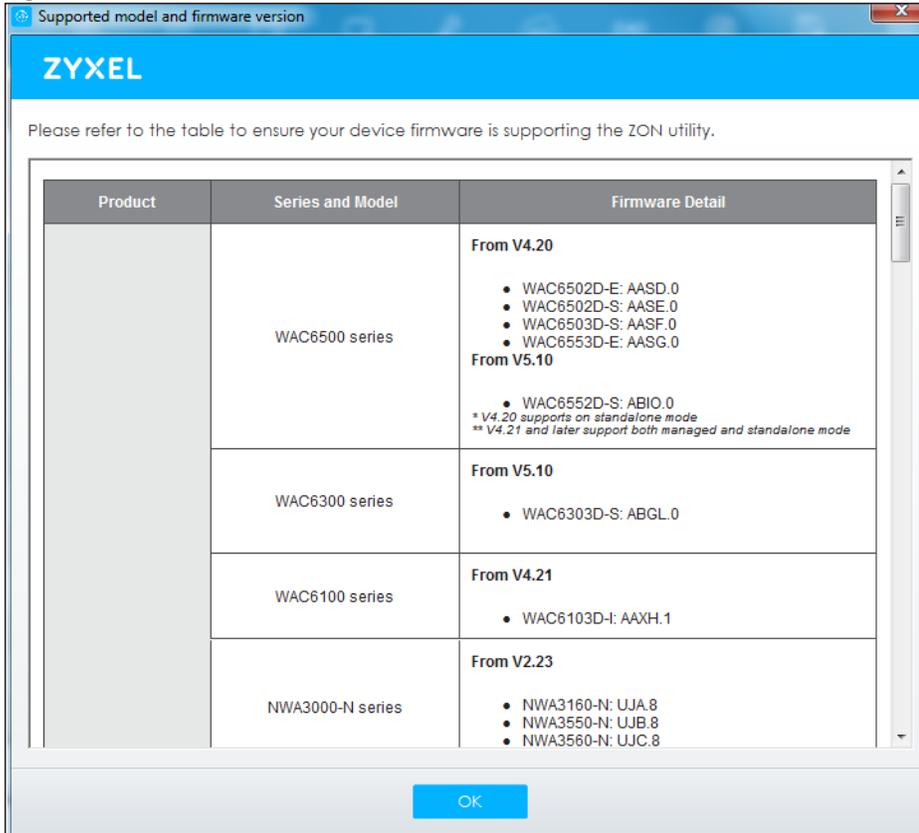
Here are the minimum hardware requirements to use the ZON Utility on your PC.

- Core i3 processor
- 2GB RAM
- 100MB free hard disk
- WXGA (Wide XGA 1280x800)

2.3.2 Run the ZON Utility

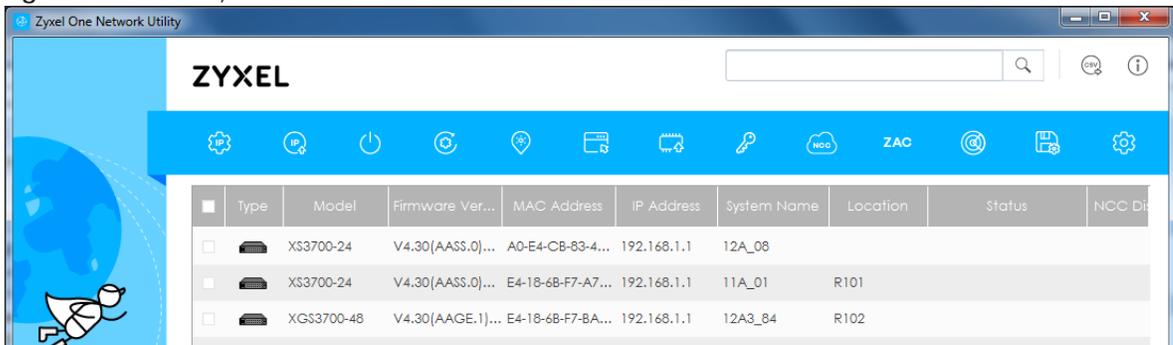
- 1 Double-click the ZON Utility to run it.
- 2 The first time you run the ZON Utility, you will see if your device and firmware version support the ZON Utility. Click the **OK** button to close this screen.

Figure 6 Supported Devices and Versions



If you want to check the supported models and firmware versions later, you can click the **Show information about ZON** icon in the upper right hand corner of the screen. Then select the **Supported model and firmware version** link. If your device is not listed here, see the device release notes for ZON utility support. The release notes are in the firmware zip file on the Zyxel web site.

Figure 7 ZON Utility Screen



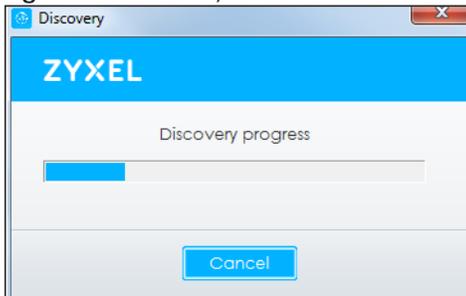
- 3 Select a network adapter to which your supported devices are connected.

Figure 8 Network Adapter



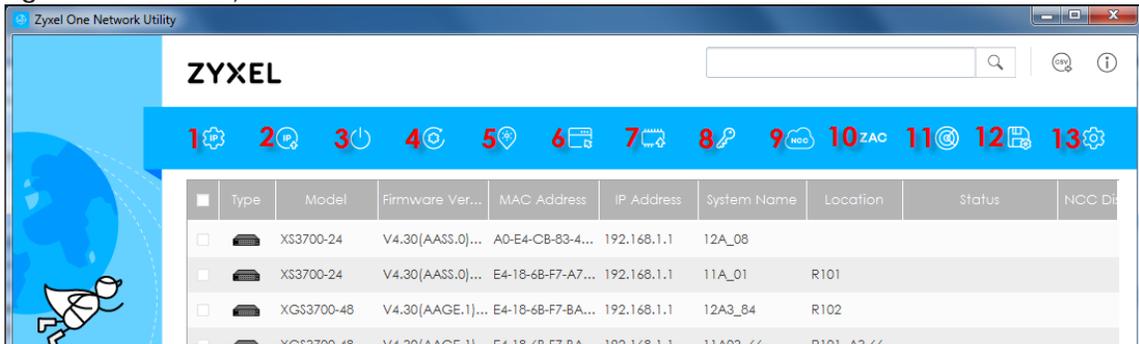
- 4 Click the **Go** button for the ZON Utility to discover all supported devices in your network.

Figure 9 Discovery



- 5 The ZON Utility screen shows the devices discovered.

Figure 10 ZON Utility Screen



- 6 Select a device and then use the icons to perform actions. Some functions may not be available for your devices.

Note: You must know the selected device admin password before taking actions on the device using the ZON utility icons.

Figure 11 Password Prompt



The following table describes the icons numbered from left to right in the ZON Utility screen.

Table 6 ZON Utility Icons

| ICON | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 IP configuration | Change the selected device's IP address. |
| 2 Renew IP Address | Update a DHCP-assigned dynamic IP address. |
| 3 Reboot Device | Use this icon to restart the selected device(s). This may be useful when troubleshooting or upgrading new firmware. |
| 4 Reset Configuration to Default | Use this icon to reload the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all previous configurations. |
| 5 Locator LED | Use this icon to locate the selected device by causing its Locator LED to blink. |
| 6 Web GUI | Use this to access the selected device web configurator from your browser. You will need a username and password to log in. |
| 7 Firmware Upgrade | Use this icon to upgrade new firmware to selected device(s) of the same model. Make sure you have downloaded the firmware from the Zyxel website to your computer and unzipped it in advance. |
| 8 Change Password | Use this icon to change the admin password of the selected device. You must know the current admin password before changing to a new one. |
| 9 Configure NCC Discovery | You must have Internet access to use this feature. Use this icon to enable or disable the Nebula Control Center (NCC) discovery feature on the selected device. If it's enabled, the selected device will try to connect to the NCC. Once the selected device is connected to and has registered in the NCC, it'll go into the Nebula cloud management mode. |
| 10 ZAC | Use this icon to run the Zyxel AP Configurator of the selected AP. |
| 11 Clear and Rescan | Use this icon to clear the list and discover all devices on the connected network again. |
| 12 Save Configuration | Use this icon to save configuration changes to permanent memory on a selected device. |
| 13 Settings | Use this icon to select a network adaptor for the computer on which the ZON utility is installed, and the utility language. |

The following table describes the fields in the ZON Utility main screen.

Table 7 ZON Utility Fields

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| Type | This field displays an icon of the kind of device discovered. |
| Model | This field displays the model name of the discovered device. |
| Firmware Version | This field displays the firmware version of the discovered device. |

Table 7 ZON Utility Fields

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|---|
| MAC Address | This field displays the MAC address of the discovered device. |
| IP Address | This field displays the IP address of an internal interface on the discovered device that first received an ZDP discovery request from the ZON utility. |
| System Name | This field displays the system name of the discovered device. |
| Location | This field displays where the discovered device is. |
| Status | This field displays whether changes to the discovered device have been done successfully. As the Zyxel Device does not support IP Configuration, Renew IP address and Flash Locator LED , this field displays "Update failed", "Not support Renew IP address" and "Not support Flash Locator LED" respectively. |
| NCC Discovery | This field displays if the discovered device supports the Nebula Control Center (NCC) discovery feature. If it's enabled, the selected device will try to connect to the NCC. Once the selected device is connected to and has registered in the NCC, it'll go into the Nebula cloud management mode. |
| Serial Number | Enter the admin password of the discovered device to display its serial number. |
| Hardware Version | This field displays the hardware version of the discovered device. |

2.4 Ways to Access the Zyxel Device

You can use the following ways to configure the Zyxel Device.

Web Configurator

The Web Configurator allows easy Zyxel Device setup and management using an Internet browser. If your Zyxel Device is managed by the NCC or an AC, use this only for troubleshooting if you cannot connect to the Internet. This User's Guide provides information about the Web Configurator.

NCC

This is the primary means by which you manage the Zyxel Device in cloud (NCC) mode. With the NCC, you can remotely manage and monitor the Zyxel Device through a cloud-based network management system. See the NCC User's Guide for more information.

ZON Utility

Zyxel One Network (ZON) Utility is a utility tool that assists you to set up and maintain network devices in a simple and efficient way. You can download the ZON Utility at www.zyxel.com and install it on your computer (Windows operating system). For more information on ZON Utility see [Section 2.3 on page 27](#).

Command-Line Interface (CLI)

The CLI allows you to use text-based commands to configure the Zyxel Device. You can access it using remote management (for example, SSH or Telnet). See the Command Reference Guide for more information.

File Transfer Protocol (FTP)

This protocol can be used for firmware upgrades and configuration backup and restore.

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)

The Zyxel Device can be monitored by an SNMP manager. See the SNMP chapter in this User's Guide.

2.5 Good Habits for Managing the Zyxel Device

Do the following things regularly to make the Zyxel Device more secure and to manage it more effectively.

- Change the password often. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the Zyxel Device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the Zyxel Device to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you won't have to totally re-configure the Zyxel Device; you can simply restore your last configuration.

CHAPTER 3

Hardware

See the Quick Start Guide for hardware installation and connections.

3.1 Grounding (WAC6552D-S and WAC6553D-E)

Earth grounding helps protect against lightning and interference.

Note: The power installation must be performed by qualified service personnel and should conform to the National Electrical Code.

The Zyxel Device must be connected to earth ground to adequately ground the Zyxel Device and protect the operator from electrical hazards.

Qualified service personnel must confirm that the protective earthing terminal of the building is a valid terminal.

Before connecting the ground, ensure that a qualified service personnel has attached an appropriate ground lug to the ground cable.

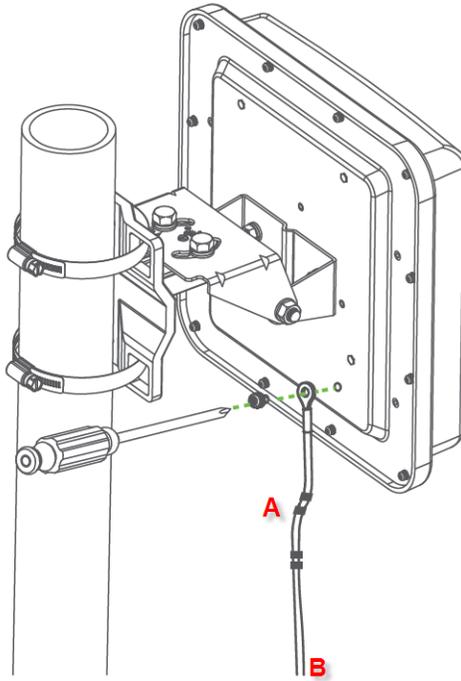
- 1 Remove one of the ground screws from the Zyxel Device's rear panel.
- 2 Secure a green/yellow ground cable (18 AWG or smaller) to the Zyxel Device's rear panel using the ground screw.
- 3 Attach the other end of the cable to the ground, either to the same ground electrode as the pole you installed the Zyxel Device on or to the main grounding electrode of the building.

Note: Follow your country's regulations and safety instructions to electrically ground the Zyxel Device properly. If you are uncertain that suitable grounding is available, contact the appropriate electrical inspection authority or an electrician.

Warning! Connect the ground cable before you connect any other cables or wiring.

The figure below illustrates how the ground cable (A) is attached to the Zyxel Device and goes to the earth ground (B).

Figure 12 Grounding Example



3.2 Zyxel Device Models With Single LEDs

The LEDs of some Zyxel Device models can be controlled by using the suppression feature such that the LEDs stay lit (ON) or OFF after the Zyxel Device is ready. Some Zyxel Device models also has Locator LED which allows you to see the actual location of the Zyxel Device among several devices in the network. See [Section 1.4 on page 19](#) to check which models support these features. Refer to [Chapter 21 on page 221](#) for the LED **Suppression** and **Locator** menus in standalone mode.

The following models have single LEDs: NWA1123-ACv2, NWA1123-AC HD, NWA5123AC, NWA5123-AC HD, WAC6303D-S, [NWA1123AX](#), [WAX510D](#) and [WAX650S](#).

3.2.1 NWA1123-ACv2

The following are the LED descriptions for your NWA1123-ACv2.

Figure 13 NWA1123-ACv2 LED



The following are the LED descriptions for your NWA1123-ACv2.

Table 8 NWA1123-ACv2 LED

| COLOR | | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-------|--|--|
|  | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively. | The LED blinks amber and green alternatively when the Zyxel Device is booting up or is connecting to the NCC. |
| | Green | | |
|  | Amber | Blinks amber and green alternatively 3 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The Zyxel Device is discovering the NCC. |
| | Green | | |
|  | Green | On | The Zyxel Device is ready for use and its wireless interface is activated. |
|  | | Slow Blinking (On for 1s, Off for 1s) | The wireless module of the Zyxel Device is disabled or failed, the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode and is using default wireless settings or the Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC but is unregistered with the NCC. |
|  | | Fast Blinking (On for 50ms, Off for 50ms) | The Locator LED is on. |
|  | Amber | On | The Zyxel Device is powered up. |

Table 8 NWA1123-ACv2 LED (continued)

| COLOR | | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-----|---|---|
|  | Red | Steady On | The Zyxel Device failed to boot up or is experiencing system failure. |
|  | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3s) | The Uplink interface is down. |
|  | | Fast Blinking (On for 50ms, Off for 50ms) | The Zyxel Device is undergoing firmware upgrade. |

3.2.2 WAC6303D-S and NWA5123-AC HD

The following are the LED descriptions for your WAC6303D-S or NWA5123-AC HD.

Figure 14 WAC6303D-S LED



The following are the LED descriptions for your WAC6303D-S or NWA5123-AC HD.

Table 9 WAC6303D-S and NWA5123-AC HD LED

| COLOR | | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-------|--|---|
|  | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively. | The Zyxel Device is booting up or is connecting with NCC. |
|  | Green | | |
|  | Amber | Blinks amber and green alternatively 3 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The Zyxel Device is discovering the NCC or an AC. |
|  | Green | | |

Table 9 WAC6303D-S and NWA5123-AC HD LED (continued)

| COLOR | | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-------------|--|--|
|  | Amber | Blinks amber and green alternatively 2 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The Zyxel Device is managed by an AC but the uplink is disconnected. |
| | Green | | |
|  | Green | Slow Blinking (On for 1 second, Off for 1 second) | The wireless module of the Zyxel Device is disabled or fails, the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode and is using default wireless settings, or the Zyxel Device is configured to be managed by NCC but is not yet registered with the NCC. |
|  | Green | Steady On | The Zyxel Device is ready for use, the Zyxel Device's wireless interface is activated, and/or wireless clients are connected to the Zyxel Device when it receives power using IEEE 802.3at PoE plus (full power mode). |
|  | Amber | Steady On | The Zyxel Device ready for use, the Zyxel Device's wireless interface is activated, and/or wireless clients are connected to the Zyxel Device when it receives power using 802.3af PoE (limited power mode). |
|  | Bright Blue | Steady On | The Zyxel Device's wireless interface is activated, but there are no wireless clients connected when it receives power using IEEE 802.3at PoE plus (full power mode). |
|  | White | Steady On | The Zyxel Device's wireless interface is activated, but there are no wireless clients connected when it receives power using 802.3af PoE (limited power mode). |
|  | | Slow Blinking (On for 100ms per second) | Locator LED is on. It switches off automatically after the configured amount of time (1-60min). Default duration is 10 minutes. |
|  | Blue | Slow Blinking (Blink for 1 time, Off for 1 second) | The Zyxel Device is performing a Channel Availability Check (CAC) with Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) to monitor a channel for radar signals. |
|  | Red | On | The Zyxel Device failed to boot up or is experience system failure. |
|  | | Fast Blinking (On for 50 milliseconds, Off for 50 milliseconds) | The Zyxel Device is undergoing firmware upgrade. |
|  | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3 seconds) | The Uplink port of the Zyxel Device in standalone mode is disconnected. |

3.2.3 NWA1123-AC HD

The following are the LED descriptions for your NWA1123-AC HD.

Figure 15 NWA1123-AC HD LED



The following are the LED descriptions for your NWA1123-AC HD.

Table 10 NWA1123-AC HD LED

| COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION | |
|---|----------------|--|--|
|  | Amber Green | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively. | The Zyxel Device is booting up or connecting with NCC. |
|  | Amber Green | Blinks amber and green alternatively 3 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The Zyxel Device is discovering the NCC. |
|  | Green | Slow Blinking (On for 1 second, Off for 1 second) | The wireless module of the Zyxel Device is disabled or fails, the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode and is using default wireless settings, or the Zyxel Device is configured to be managed by NCC but is not yet registered with the NCC. |
|  | Green | Steady On | The Zyxel Device is ready for use, the Zyxel Device's wireless interface is activated, and/or wireless clients are connected to the Zyxel Device when it receives power using IEEE 802.3at PoE plus (full power mode). |
|  | Amber | Steady On | The Zyxel Device is ready for use, the Zyxel Device's wireless interface is activated, and/or wireless clients are connected to the Zyxel Device when it receives power using 802.3af PoE (limited power mode). |
|  | Bright Blue | Steady On | The Zyxel Device's wireless interface is activated, but there are no wireless clients connected when it receives power using IEEE 802.3at PoE plus (full power mode). |

Table 10 NWA1123-AC HD LED (continued)

| COLOR | | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-------|---|--|
|  | White | Steady On | The Zyxel Device's wireless interface is activated, but there are no wireless clients connected when it receives power using 802.3af PoE (limited power mode). |
|  | | Slow Blinking (On for 100ms per second) | Locator LED is on. It switches off automatically after the configured amount of time (1-60min). Default duration is 10 minutes. |
|  | Blue | Slow Blinking (Blink for 1 time, Off for 1 second) | The Zyxel Device is performing a Channel Availability Check (CAC) with Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) to monitor a channel for radar signals. |
|  | Red | On | The Zyxel Device failed to boot up or is experience system failure. |
|  | | Fast Blinking (On for 50 milliseconds, Off for 50 milliseconds) | The Zyxel Device is undergoing firmware upgrade. |
|  | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3 seconds) | The Uplink interface of the Zyxel Device is down. |

3.2.4 NWA5123-AC

The following are the LED descriptions for your NWA5123-AC.

Figure 16 NWA5123-AC LED



The following are the LED descriptions for your NWA5123-AC.

Table 11 NWA5123-AC LED

| COLOR | | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-------|--|---|
|  | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively. | The Zyxel Device is booting up. |
| | Green | | |
|  | Amber | Blinks amber and green alternatively 3 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The Zyxel Device is discovering an AC. |
| | Green | | |
|  | Amber | Blinks amber and green alternatively 2 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The Zyxel Device is managed by an AC and the uplink interface is down. |
| | Green | | |
|  | Green | On | The Zyxel Device is ready for use and its wireless interface is activated. |
|  | | Slow Blinking (On for 1s, Off for 1s) | The wireless module of the Zyxel Device is disabled or failed, or the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode and is using default wireless settings. |
|  | | Fast Blinking (On for 50ms, Off for 50ms) | The Locator LED is on. |
|  | Amber | On | The Zyxel Device is powered up. |
|  | Red | Steady On | The Zyxel Device failed to boot up or is experiencing system failure. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3s) | The Uplink interface is down. |
| | | Fast Blinking (On for 50ms, Off for 50ms) | The Zyxel Device is undergoing firmware upgrade. |

3.2.5 NWA1123AX, WAX510D and WAX650S

[The following are the LED descriptions for your NWA1123AX, WAX510D and WAX650S.](#)

Figure 17 NWA1123AX, WAX510D and WAX650S LED



The following are the LED descriptions for your NWA1123AX, WAX510D and WAX650S.

Table 12 NWA1123AX, WAX510D and WAX650S LED

| COLOR | | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-------|--|---|
|  | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively. | The LED blinks amber and green alternatively when the Zyxel Device is booting up or is connecting to the NCC. |
| | Green | | |
|  | Amber | Blinks amber and green alternatively 3 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The Zyxel Device is discovering the NCC. |
| | Green | | |
|  | Green | On | The Zyxel Device is ready for use and its wireless interface is activated. |
| | | Slow Blinking (On for 1s, Off for 1s) | The wireless module of the Zyxel Device is disabled or failed, the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode and is using default wireless settings, or the Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC but is unregistered with the NCC. |
| | | Fast Blinking (On for 50ms, Off for 50ms) | The Locator LED is on. |
|  | Amber | On | The Zyxel Device is powered up. |
|  | Red | Steady On | The Zyxel Device failed to boot up or is experiencing system failure. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3s) | The Uplink interface is down. |
| | | Fast Blinking (On for 50ms, Off for 50ms) | The Zyxel Device is undergoing firmware upgrade. |

3.3 Zyxel Device Models With Multiple LEDs

The LEDs of some Zyxel Device models can be controlled by using the suppression feature such that the LEDs stay lit (ON) or OFF after the Zyxel Device is ready. Some Zyxel Device models also has Locator LED which allows you to see the actual location of the Zyxel Device among several devices in the network. See [Section 1.4 on page 19](#) to check which models support these features. Refer to [Chapter 21 on page 221](#) for the LED **Suppression** and **Locator** menus in standalone mode.

The following models have multiple LEDs: NWA1123-AC PRO, NWA1302-AC, WAC6103D-I, WAC5302D-S, WAC6502D-E, WAC6502D-S, WAC6503D-S.

3.3.1 NWA1123-AC PRO

The following are the LED descriptions for your NWA1123-AC PRO.

Figure 18 NWA1123-AC PRO LEDs



The following table describes the LEDs.

Table 13 NWA1123-AC PRO LEDs

| LED | COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-------|--|---|
| PWR/SYS  | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively. | The LED blinks amber and green alternatively when the Zyxel Device is booting up. |
| | Green | | |
| | Green | On | The Zyxel Device is ready for use. |
| | | Slow Blinking (On for 1 sec, Off for 1 sec) | The wireless module of the Zyxel Device is disabled or failed. |
| | Red | On | There is a system error and the Zyxel Device cannot boot up, or the Zyxel Device suffered a system failure. |
| | | Fast Blinking (On for 50 ms, Off for 50 ms) | The Zyxel Device is undergoing firmware upgrade. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3 sec) | The Uplink interface is down. |
| Management  | Green | On | The Zyxel Device is managed by the NCC. |
| | | Slow Blinking (On for 1 sec, Off for 1 sec) | The Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC, but not registered. The Zyxel Device is using default wireless settings, or the Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC but is unregistered with the NCC. |
| | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively | The Zyxel Device is searching for (discovering) the NCC. |
| | Green | | |
| | Amber | Blinks amber and green alternatively 3 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The NCC is connecting to the registered Zyxel Device. |
| | Green | | |
| | Off | The Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. | |
| WLAN 2.4G | Green | On | The 2.4 GHz radio is set to "Ceiling" and is active |
| | Amber | On | The 2.4 GHz radio is set to "Wall" and is active |
| | | Off | The 2.4 GHz WLAN is not active. |
| WLAN 5G | Green | On | The 5 GHz radio is set to "Ceiling" and is active |
| | Amber | On | The 5 GHz radio is set to "Wall" and is active |
| | | Off | The 5 GHz WLAN is not active. |
| UPLINK  | Amber | On | The port is operating as a 100 Mbps connection. |
| | | Blinking | The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data through the port at 100 Mbps. |
| | Green | On | The port is operating as a Gigabit connection (1000 Mbps). |
| | | Blinking | The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data through the port at 1 Gbps. |
| | | Off | The port is not connected. |
| LAN  | Amber | On | The port is operating as a 100 Mbps connection. |
| | | Blinking | The LAN port is sending/receiving data at 100 Mbps. |
| | Green | On | The port is operating as a Gigabit connection (1000 Mbps). |
| | | Blinking | The LAN port is sending/receiving data at 1 Gbps. |
| | | Off | The LAN port is not connected. |

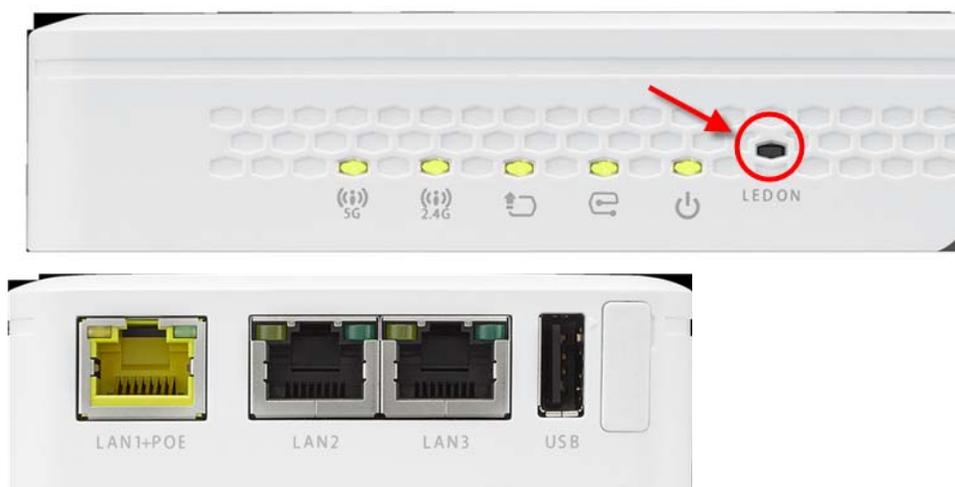
Table 13 NWA1123-AC PRO LEDs (continued)

| LED | COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|--|-------|----------|---|
| Locator  | White | Blinking | The Locator is activated and will blink to show the actual location of the Zyxel Device between several devices in the network. |
| | | Off | The Locator function is off. |

3.3.2 NWA1302-AC

By default, the LEDs automatically turn on when the NWA1302-AC is ready. If the LEDs are turned off by the NCC, you can press the **LED ON** button for one second to turn on the LEDs again. The LEDs will blink and turn off after two minutes.

Figure 19 NWA1302-AC LEDs



The following table describes the LEDs.

Table 14 NWA1302-AC LEDs

| LED | COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|--|-------|---|---|
| PWR/SYS  | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively. | The LED blinks amber and green alternatively when the Zyxel Device is booting up. |
| | Green | On | The Zyxel Device is ready for use. |
| | Green | Slow Blinking (On for 1 sec, Off for 1 sec) | The wireless module of the Zyxel Device is disabled or failed, or the Locator LED is on. |
| | | Fast Blinking (On 50ms, Off 50ms) | The Locator LED is on. |
| | | Red | On |
| | Red | Fast Blinking (On for 50 ms, Off for 50 ms) | The Zyxel Device is doing firmware upgrade. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3 sec) | The Uplink interface is down. |

Table 14 NWA1302-AC LEDs (continued)

| LED | COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-------|--|--|
| Management  | Green | On | The Zyxel Device is managed by the NCC. |
| | | Slow Blinking (On for 1 sec, Off for 1 sec) | The Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC, but not registered. The Zyxel Device is using default wireless settings, or the Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC but is unregistered with the NCC. |
| | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively | The Zyxel Device is searching for (discovering) the NCC. |
| | Green | | |
| | Amber | Blinks amber and green alternatively 3 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The NCC is connecting to the registered Zyxel Device. |
| | Green | | |
| Off | | The Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. | |
| UPLINK  | Amber | On | The port is operating as a 10/100 Mbps connection. |
| | | Blinking | The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data through the port at 10/100 Mbps. |
| | Green | On | The port is operating as a Gigabit connection (1000 Mbps). |
| | | Blinking | The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data through the port at 1 Gbps. |
| | Off | | The port is not connected. |
| WLAN  2.4 G | Green | On | The 2.4 GHz WLAN is active. |
| | | Off | The 2.4 GHz WLAN is not active. |
| WLAN  5 G | Green | On | The 5 GHz WLAN is active. |
| | | Off | The 5 GHz WLAN is not active. |
| LAN  | Amber | On | The port is operating as a 10/100 Mbps connection. |
| | | Blinking | The LAN port is sending/receiving data through the port at 10/100 Mbps. |
| | Green | On | The port is operating as a Gigabit connection (1000 Mbps). |
| | | Blinking | The LAN port is sending/receiving data through the port at 1 Gbps. |
| | Off | | The LAN port is not connected. |

3.3.3 WAC6502D-E, WAC6502D-S, and WAC6503D-S

The following are the LED descriptions for your WAC6502D-E, WAC6502D-S, or WAC6503D-S.

Figure 20 WAC6502D-E, WAC6502D-S, or WAC6503D-S LEDs



The following table describes the LEDs.

Table 15 WAC6502D-E, WAC6502D-S, or WAC6503D-S LEDs

| LED | COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------|-------|---|---|
| PWR/SYS ⏻ | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively. | The ZyXel Device is booting up or is connecting to the NCC or to an AC. |
| | Green | | |
| | Green | On | The ZyXel Device is ready for use. |
| | | Slow Blinking (On for 1s, Off for 1ss) | The wireless module of the ZyXel Device is disabled or failed. |
| | | Red | On |
| | Red | Fast Blinking (On for 50ms, Off for 50ms) | The ZyXel Device is doing firmware upgrade. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3s) | The Uplink interface is down. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 2 times, Off for 3s) | The ZyXel Device is managed by an AC and the uplink is disconnected. |

Table 15 WAC6502D-E, WAC6502D-S, or WAC6503D-S LEDs (continued)

| LED | COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|--|--|
| Management  | Green | On | The Zyxel Device is managed by a the NCC or an AC. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3s) | The Zyxel Device is searching (discovery) for an AC. |
| | | Slow Blinking (On for 1s, Off for 1s) | The Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC but not registered. The Zyxel Device is using default wireless settings, or the Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC but is unregistered with the NCC. |
| | | Off | The Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. |
| | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively | The Zyxel Device is searching (discovery) for the NCC. |
| | Green | | |
| Amber | Blinks amber and green alternatively 3 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The NCC is connecting to the registered Zyxel Device. | |
| Green | | | |
| WLAN  | Green | On | The 2.4 GHz WLAN is active. |
| | | Off | The 2.4 GHz WLAN is not active. |
| WLAN  | Green | On | The 5 GHz WLAN is active. |
| | | Off | The 5 GHz WLAN is not active. |
| UPLINK  | Amber | On | The port is operating as a 100 Mbps connection. |
| | | Blinking | The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data through the port at 100 Mbps. |
| | Green | On | The port is operating as a Gigabit connection (1000 Mbps). |
| | | Blinking | The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data through the port at 1 Gbps. |
| | | Off | The port is not connected. |
| LAN  | Amber | On | The port is operating as a 100 Mbps connection. |
| | | Blinking | The LAN port is sending/receiving data through the port at 100 Mbps. |
| | Green | On | The port is operating as a Gigabit connection (1000 Mbps). |
| | | Blinking | The LAN port is sending/receiving data through the port at 1 Gbps. |
| | | Off | The LAN port is not connected. |
| Locator  | White | Blinking | The Locator is activated and will blink to show the actual location of the Zyxel Device between several devices in the network. |
| | | Off | The Locator function is off. |

3.3.4 WAC6103D-I

The following are the LED descriptions for your WAC6103D-I.

Figure 21 WAC6103D-I LEDs



The following table describes the LEDs.

Table 16 WAC6103D-I LEDs

| LED | COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|--|-------|---|---|
| PWR/SYS  | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively. | The ZyXel Device is booting up. |
| | Green | | |
| | Green | On | The ZyXel Device is ready for use. |
| | | Slow Blinking (On for 1s, Off for 1s) | The wireless module of the ZyXel Device is disabled or failed. |
| | Red | On | There is system error and the ZyXel Device cannot boot up, or the ZyXel Device suffered a system failure. |
| | | Fast Blinking (On for 50ms, Off for 50ms) | The ZyXel Device is doing firmware upgrade. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3s) | The Uplink port is disconnected. |

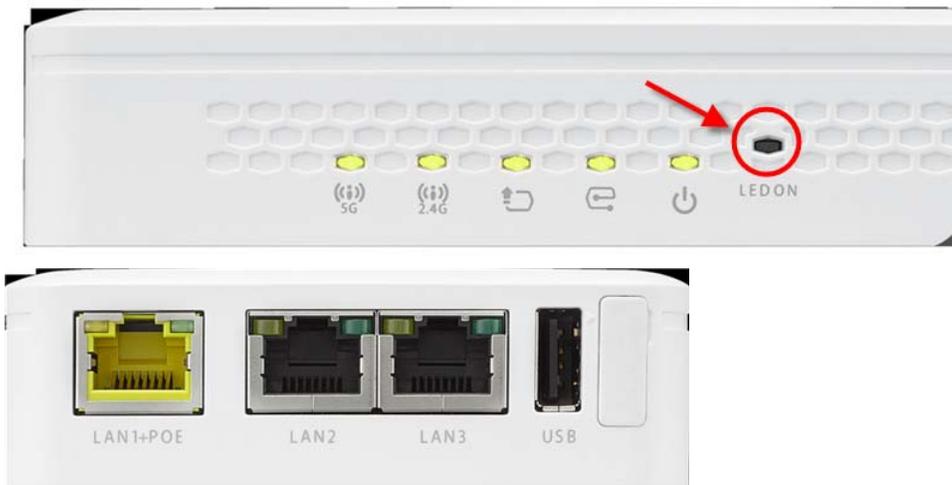
Table 16 WAC6103D-I LEDs (continued)

| LED | COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-------|--|--|
| Management  | Green | On | The Zyxel Device is managed by an AC or the NCC. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3s) | The Zyxel Device is searching (discovery) for an AC. |
| | | Slow Blinking (On for 1s, Off for 1s) | The Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC but not registered. The Zyxel Device is using default wireless settings, or the Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC but is unregistered with the NCC. |
| | | Off | The Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. |
| | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively | The Zyxel Device is searching (discovery) for the NCC. |
| | Green | | |
| | Amber | Blinks amber and green alternatively 3 times and then turns solid green for 3 seconds. | The NCC is connecting to the registered Zyxel Device. |
| Green | | | |
| WLAN 2.4G | Green | On | The 2.4 GHz radio is set to "Ceiling" and is active |
| | Amber | On | The 2.4 GHz radio is set to "Wall" and is active |
| | | Off | The 2.4 GHz WLAN is not active. |
| WLAN 5G | Green | On | The 5 GHz radio is set to "Ceiling" and is active |
| | Amber | On | The 5 GHz radio is set to "Wall" and is active |
| | | Off | The 5 GHz WLAN is not active. |
| UPLINK  | Amber | On | The port is operating as a 100 Mbps connection. |
| | | Blinking | The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data through the port at 100 Mbps. |
| | Green | On | The port is operating as a Gigabit connection (1000 Mbps). |
| | | Blinking | The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data through the port at 1 Gbps. |
| | | Off | The port is not connected. |
| LAN  | Amber | On | The port is operating as a 100 Mbps connection. |
| | | Blinking | The LAN port is sending/receiving data through the port at 100 Mbps. |
| | Green | On | The port is operating as a Gigabit connection (1000 Mbps). |
| | | Blinking | The LAN port is sending/receiving data through the port at 1 Gbps. |
| | | Off | The LAN port is not connected. |
| Locator  | White | Blinking | The Locator is activated and will blink to show the actual location of the Zyxel Device between several devices in the network. |
| | | Off | The Locator function is off. |

3.3.5 WAC5302D-S

The LEDs automatically turn off when the WAC5302D-S is ready. You can press the **LED ON** button for one second to turn on the LEDs again. The LEDs will blink and turn off after two minutes.

Figure 22 WAC5302D-S LEDs



The following table describes the LEDs.

Table 17 WAC5302D-S LEDs

| LED | COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-----------------|---|--|
| PWR/SYS ⏻ | Amber | Blinks amber for 1 second and green for 1 second alternatively. | The LED blinks amber and green alternatively when the WAC is booting up. |
| | Green | | |
| | Green | On | The Zyxel Device is ready for use. |
| | | Slow Blinking (On for 1s, Off for 1s) | The wireless module of the Zyxel Device is disabled or failed. |
| | | Fast Blinking (On 50ms, Off 50ms) | The Locator LED is on. |
| | Red | On | There is system error and the Zyxel Device cannot boot up, or the Zyxel Device suffered a system failure. |
| | | Fast Blinking (On for 50ms, Off for 50ms) | The Zyxel Device is doing firmware upgrade. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3s) | The Uplink interface is down. |
| | | Slow Blinking (Blink for 2 times, Off for 3s) | The Zyxel Device is managed by an AC and the uplink is disconnected. |
| | Management 📶 | Green | On |
| Slow Blinking (Blink for 3 times, Off for 3s) | | | The Zyxel Device is searching (discovery) for a controller. |
| Slow Blinking (On for 1s, Off for 1s) | | | The Zyxel Device is using default wireless settings, or the Zyxel Device is connected to the NCC but is unregistered with the NCC. |
| Off | | | The Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. |

Table 17 WAC5302D-S LEDs (continued)

| LED | COLOR | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|-------|----------|---|
| UPLINK  | Amber | On | The port is operating as a 10/100 Mbps connection. |
| | | Blinking | The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data through the port at 10/100 Mbps. |
| | Green | On | The port is operating as a Gigabit connection (1000 Mbps). |
| | | Blinking | The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data through the port at 1 Gbps. |
| | | Off | The port is not connected. |
| WLAN  | Green | On | The 2.4 GHz WLAN is active. |
| | | Off | The 2.4 GHz WLAN is not active. |
| WLAN  | Green | On | The 5 GHz WLAN is active. |
| | | Off | The 5 GHz WLAN is not active. |
| LAN | Amber | On | The port is operating as a 10/100 Mbps connection. |
| | | Blinking | The LAN port is sending/receiving data through the port at 10/100 Mbps. |
| | Green | On | The port is operating as a Gigabit connection (1000 Mbps). |
| | | Blinking | The LAN port is sending/receiving data through the port at 1 Gbps. |
| | | Off | The LAN port is not connected. |

CHAPTER 4

The Web Configurator

4.1 Overview

The Zyxel Device Web Configurator allows management using an Internet browser.

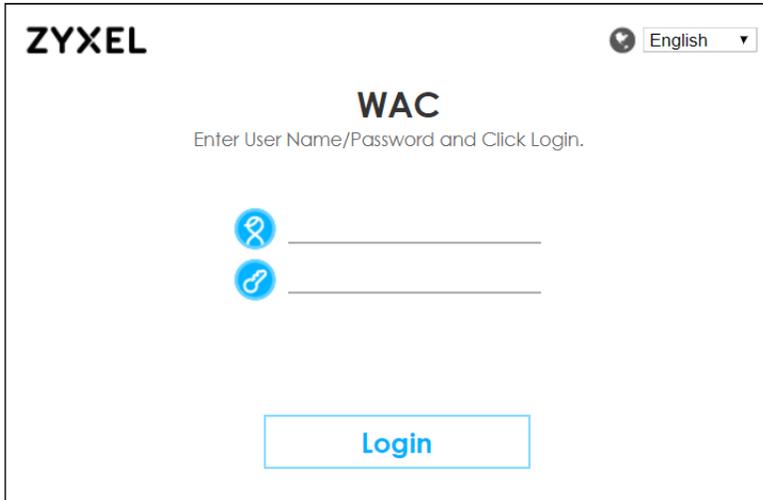
In order to use the Web Configurator, you must:

- Use Internet Explorer 10.0 and later versions, Mozilla Firefox 36.0 and later versions, Safari 9.0 and later versions, or Google Chrome 38.0 and later versions.
- Allow pop-up windows.
- Enable JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Enable Java permissions (enabled by default).
- Enable cookies.

The recommended screen resolution is 1024 x 768 pixels and higher.

4.2 Accessing the Web Configurator

- 1 Make sure your Zyxel Device hardware is properly connected. See the Quick Start Guide.
- 2 If the Zyxel Device and your computer are not connected to a DHCP server, make sure your computer's IP address is in the range between "192.168.1.3" and "192.168.1.254".
- 3 Browse to the Zyxel Device's DHCP-assigned IP address or <http://192.168.1.2>. The **Login** screen appears. If you are in NCC mode, check the NCC's **AP > Monitor > Access Point** screen for the Zyxel Device's LAN IP address.



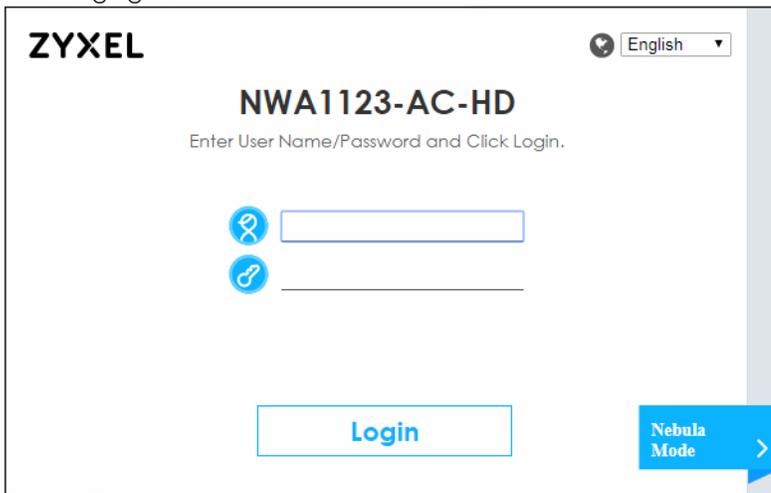
ZYXEL English

WAC

Enter User Name/Password and Click Login.

Login

If a ZyXel Device is in standalone mode and supports NCC, the login page displays as shown in the following figure.



ZYXEL English

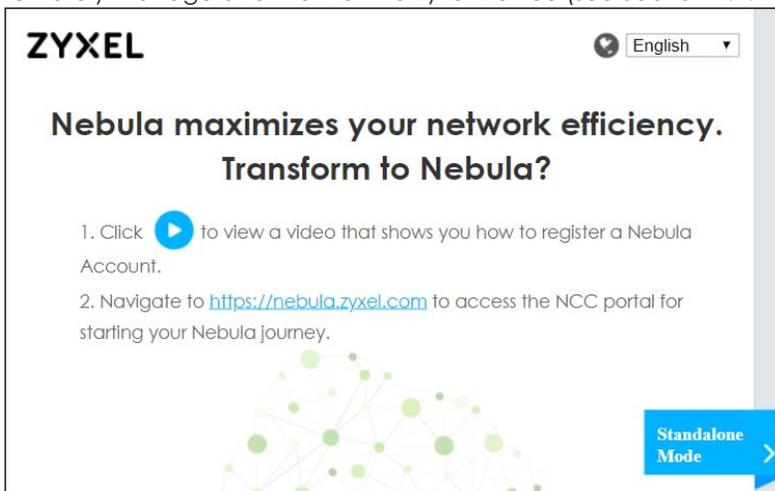
NWA1123-AC-HD

Enter User Name/Password and Click Login.

Login

Nebula Mode >

Click **Nebula Mode** to show the following screen. Here, you can watch a tutorial for using the ZyXel Nebula Control Center (NCC) or access the link to the NCC, as shown in the following figure. Otherwise, continue with the next step. The NCC is a cloud-based network management system that allows you to remotely manage and monitor the ZyXel Device (see [Section 2.1.2 on page 24](#)).



ZYXEL English

Nebula maximizes your network efficiency. Transform to Nebula?

1. Click  to view a video that shows you how to register a Nebula Account.
2. Navigate to <https://nebula.zyxel.com> to access the NCC portal for starting your Nebula journey.

Standalone Mode >

If you want to return to the login page, click **Standalone Mode** and follow the next steps.

- 4 Enter the user name (default: "admin") and password (default: "1234"). If the Zyxel Device is being managed or has been managed by the NCC, check the NCC's **Site-Wide > Configure > General setting** screen for the Zyxel Device's current password.
- 5 Select the language you prefer for the Web Configurator. Click **Login**.
- 6 The wizard screen opens when the Zyxel Device is accessed for the first time or when you reset the Zyxel Device to its default factory settings.
- 7 If you logged in using the default user name and password, the **Update Admin Info** screen appears. Otherwise, the dashboard appears.

ZYXEL

WAC

Update Admin Info

As a security precaution, it is highly recommended that you change the admin password.

New Password

Confirm Password

(max. 63 alphanumeric, printable characters and no spaces)

Apply **Ignore**

The **Update Admin Info** screen appears every time you log in using the default user name and default password. If you change the password for the default user account, this screen does not appear anymore.

4.3 Navigating the Web Configurator

The following summarizes how to navigate the web configurator from the **Dashboard** screen. The following figures show the **Dashboard** screen for standalone mode and for cloud (NCC) mode. The screen is different for standalone mode and cloud (NCC) mode and may vary slightly for different models.

Figure 23 The Web Configurator's Main Screen for Standalone Mode

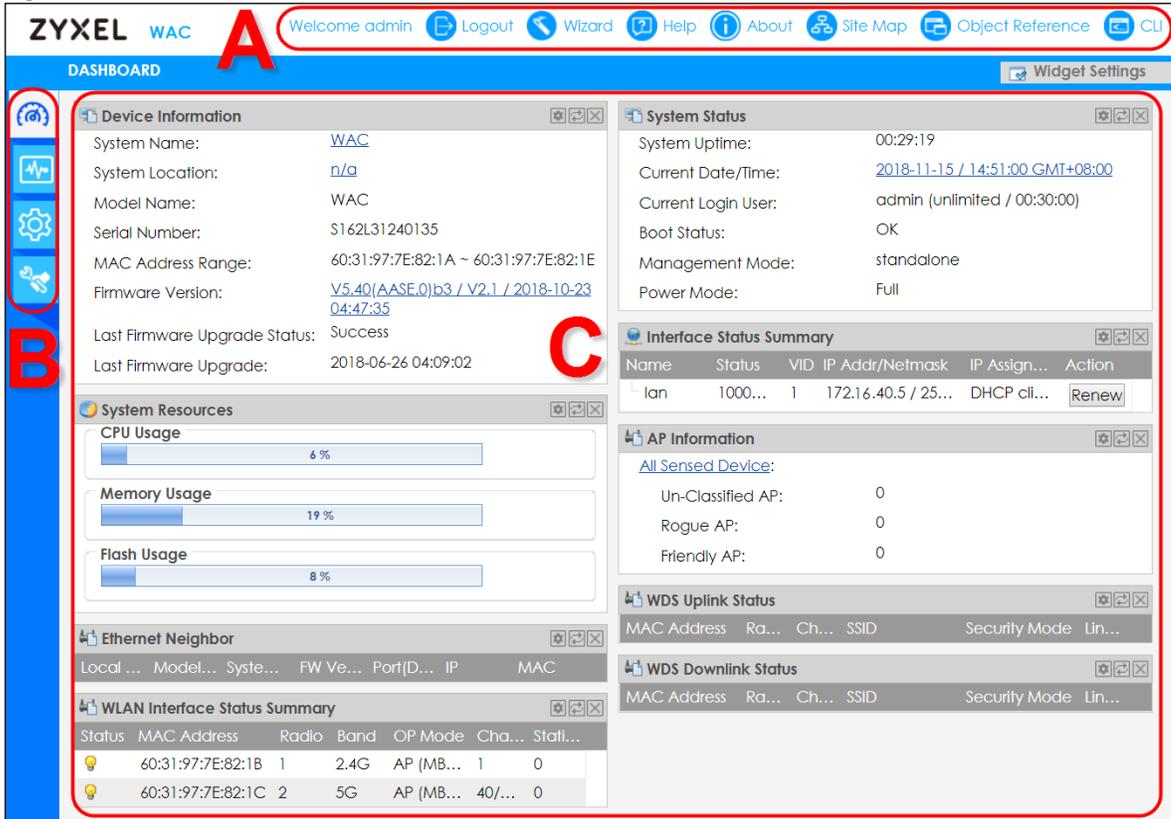
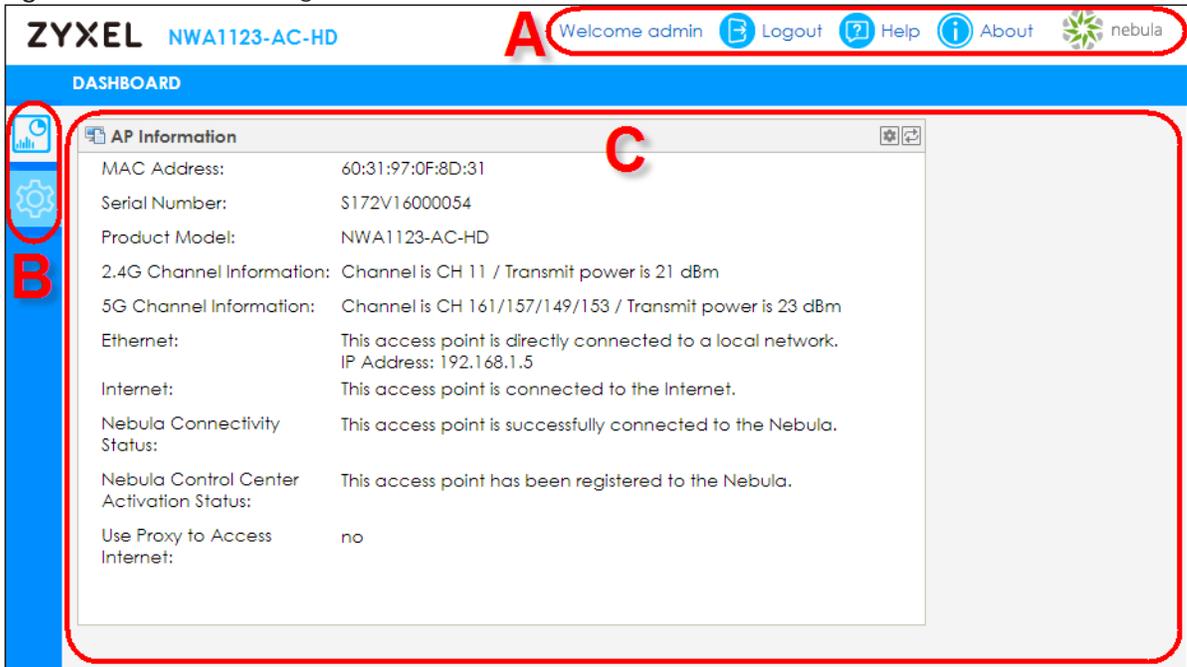


Figure 24 The Web Configurator's Main Screen for Cloud Mode



The Web Configurator's main screen is divided into these parts:

- A - Title Bar
- B - Navigation Panel

- C - Main Window

4.3.1 Title Bar

The title bar provides some useful links that always appear over the screens below, regardless of how deep into the Web Configurator you navigate. If your Zyxel Device is in NCC mode, not all icons will be available in the Title Bar (see [Figure 24 on page 55](#)).

Figure 25 Title Bar



The icons provide the following functions.

Table 18 Title Bar: Web Configurator Icons

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| Logout | Click this to log out of the Web Configurator. |
| Wizard | Click this to open the wizard. See Chapter 7 on page 74 for more information. |
| Help | Click this to open the help page for the current screen. |
| About | Click this to display basic information about the Zyxel Device. |
| Site Map | Click this to see an overview of links to the Web Configurator screens. |
| Object Reference | Click this to open a screen where you can check which configuration items reference an object. |
| CLI | Click this to open a popup window that displays the CLI commands sent by the Web Configurator. |
| nebula | Click this to open the NCC web site login page in a new tab or window. |

About

Click **About** to display basic information about the Zyxel Device.

Figure 26 About



The following table describes labels that can appear in this screen.

Table 19 About

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|---|
| Boot Module | This shows the version number of the software that handles the booting process of the Zyxel Device. |
| Current Version | This shows the firmware version of the Zyxel Device. |

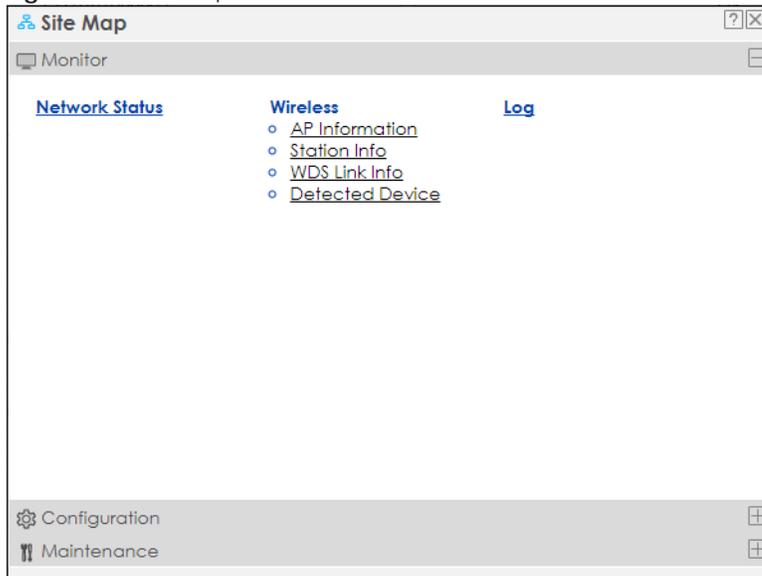
Table 19 About (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------|---|
| Released Date | This shows the date (yyyy-mm-dd) and time (hh:mm:ss) when the firmware is released. |
| OK | Click this to close the screen. |

Site Map

Click **Site MAP** to see an overview of links to the Web Configurator screens. Click a screen's link to go to that screen.

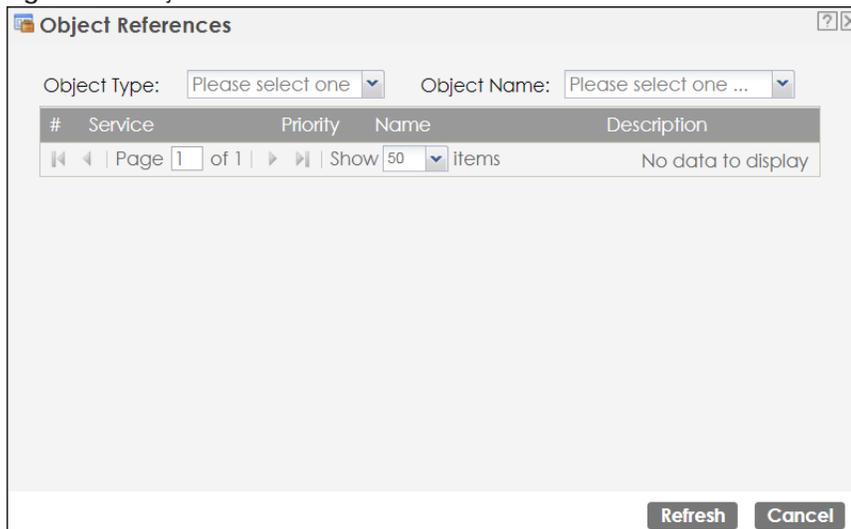
Figure 27 Site Map



Object Reference

Click **Object Reference** to open the **Object Reference** screen. Select the type of object and the individual object and click **Refresh** to show which configuration settings reference the object.

Figure 28 Object Reference



The fields vary with the type of object. The following table describes labels that can appear in this screen.

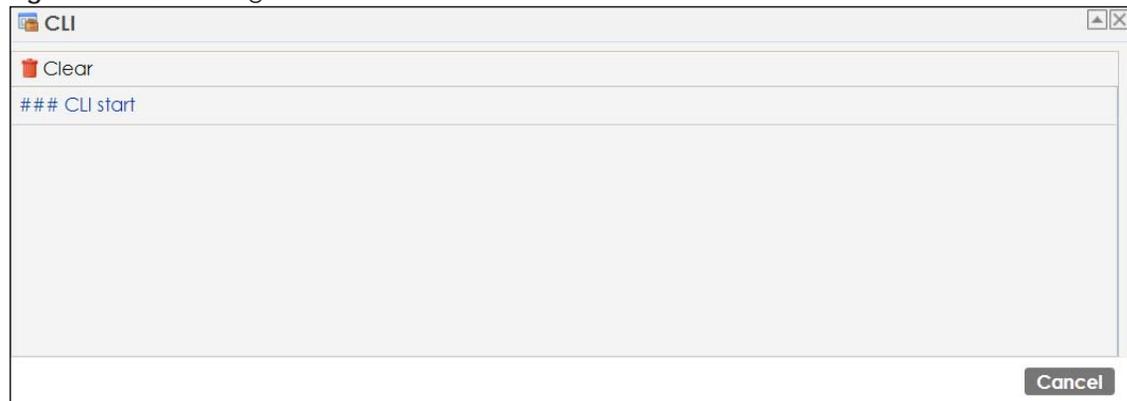
Table 20 Object References

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|--|
| Object Type | Select the type of the object. |
| Object Name | This identifies the object for which the configuration settings that use it are displayed. Select the object's name to display the object's configuration screen in the main window. |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with any entry. |
| Service | This is the type of setting that references the selected object. Click a service's name to display the service's configuration screen in the main window. |
| Priority | If it is applicable, this field lists the referencing configuration item's position in its list, otherwise N/A displays. |
| Name | This field identifies the configuration item that references the object. |
| Description | If the referencing configuration item has a description configured, it displays here. |
| Refresh | Click this to update the information in this screen. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to close the screen. |

CLI Messages

Click **CLI** to look at the CLI commands sent by the Web Configurator. These commands appear in a popup window, such as the following.

Figure 29 CLI Messages



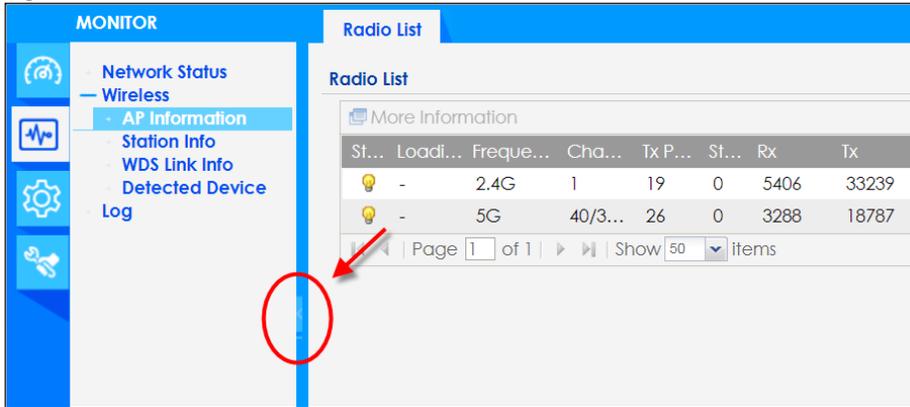
Click **Clear** to remove the currently displayed information.

Note: See the Command Reference Guide for information about the commands.

4.3.2 Navigation Panel

Use the menu items on the navigation panel to open screens to configure Zyxel Device features. Click the arrow in the middle of the right edge of the navigation panel to hide the navigation panel menus or drag it to resize them. The following sections introduce the Zyxel Device's navigation panel menus and their screens.

Figure 30 Navigation Panel



4.3.3 Standalone Mode Navigation Panel Menus

The following are the screens available in standalone mode. Note that some screens may not be available for your Zyxel Device model. See [Section 1.4 on page 19](#) to see which features your Zyxel Device model supports.

Dashboard

The dashboard displays general device information, system status, system resource usage, and interface status in widgets that you can re-arrange to suit your needs.

For details on the Dashboard's features, see [Chapter 6 on page 68](#).

Monitor Menu

The monitor menu screens display status and statistics information.

Table 21 Monitor Menu Screens Summary

| FOLDER OR LINK | TAB | FUNCTION |
|-----------------|-----------------|---|
| Network Status | Network Status | Display general LAN interface information and packet statistics. |
| Wireless | | |
| AP Information | Radio List | Display information about the radios of the connected APs. |
| Station Info | Station List | Display information about the connected stations. |
| WDS Link Info | WDS Link Info | Display statistics about the Zyxel Device's WDS (Wireless Distribution System) connections. |
| Detected Device | Detected Device | Display information about suspected rogue APs. |
| Log | View Log | Display log entries for the Zyxel Device. |

Configuration Menu

Use the configuration menu screens to configure the Zyxel Device's features.

Table 22 Configuration Menu Screens Summary

| FOLDER OR LINK | TAB | FUNCTION |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Network | IP Setting | Configure the IP address for the Zyxel Device Ethernet interface. |
| | VLAN | Manage the Ethernet interface VLAN settings. |
| | Storm Control | Enable or disable the broadcast/multicast storm control feature. |
| | AC Discovery | Configure the Zyxel Device's AP Controller settings. |
| | NCC Discovery | Configure proxy server settings to access the NCC. |
| Wireless | | |
| AP Management | WLAN Setting | Manage the Zyxel Device's general wireless settings. |
| Rogue AP | Rogue/Friendly AP List | Configure how the Zyxel Device monitors for rogue APs. |
| Load Balancing | Load Balancing | Configure load balancing for traffic moving to and from wireless clients. |
| DCS | DCS | Configure dynamic wireless channel selection. |
| Bluetooth | Advertising Settings | Configure the beacon ID(s) to be included in the Bluetooth advertising packet. |
| Object | | |
| User | User | Create and manage users. |
| | Setting | Manage default settings for all users, general settings for user sessions, and rules to force user authentication. |
| AP Profile | Radio | Create and manage wireless radio settings files that can be associated with different APs. |
| | SSID | Create and manage wireless SSID, security, MAC filtering, and layer-2 isolation files that can be associated with different APs. |
| MON Profile | MON Profile | Create and manage rogue AP monitoring files that can be associated with different APs. |
| WDS Profile | WDS | Create and manage WDS profiles that can be used to connect to different APs in WDS. |
| Certificate | My Certificates | Create and manage the Zyxel Device's certificates. |
| | Trusted Certificates | Import and manage certificates from trusted sources. |
| System | | |
| Host Name | Host Name | Configure the system and domain name for the Zyxel Device. |
| Power Mode | Power Mode | Configure the Zyxel Device's power settings. |
| Date/Time | Date/Time | Configure the current date, time, and time zone in the Zyxel Device. |
| WWW | Service Control | Configure HTTP, HTTPS, and general authentication. |
| SSH | SSH | Configure SSH server and SSH service settings. |
| TELNET | TELNET | Configure telnet server settings for the Zyxel Device. |
| FTP | FTP | Configure FTP server settings. |
| SNMP | SNMP | Configure SNMP communities and services. |
| Log & Report | | |

Table 22 Configuration Menu Screens Summary (continued)

| FOLDER OR LINK | TAB | FUNCTION |
|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| Email Daily Report | Email Daily Report | Configure where and how to send daily reports and what reports to send. |
| Log Setting | Log Setting | Configure the system log, e-mail logs, and remote syslog servers. |

Maintenance Menu

Use the maintenance menu screens to manage configuration and firmware files, run diagnostics, and reboot or shut down the Zyxel Device.

Table 23 Maintenance Menu Screens Summary

| FOLDER OR LINK | TAB | FUNCTION |
|----------------|--------------------|--|
| File Manager | Configuration File | Manage and upload configuration files for the Zyxel Device. |
| | Firmware Package | View the current firmware version and to upload firmware. |
| | Shell Script | Manage and run shell script files for the Zyxel Device. |
| Diagnostics | Diagnostics | Collect diagnostic information. |
| LEDs | Suppression | Enable this feature to keep the LEDs off after the Zyxel Device starts. |
| | Locator | Enable this feature to see the actual location of the Zyxel Device between several devices in the network. |
| Antenna | Antenna Switch | Change antenna orientation for the radios. |
| Reboot | Reboot | Restart the Zyxel Device. |
| Shutdown | Shutdown | Turn off the Zyxel Device. |

4.3.4 Cloud Mode Navigation Panel Menus

If your Zyxel Device is in NCC mode, you only need to use the Web Configurator for troubleshooting if your Zyxel Device cannot connect to the Internet.

Dashboard

The dashboard displays general Zyxel Device information, and AP information in widgets that you can re-arrange to suit your needs.

For details on the Dashboard's features, see [Chapter 26 on page 230](#).

Configuration Menu

Use the configuration menu screens to configure the Zyxel Device's features.

Table 24 Configuration Menu Screens Summary

| FOLDER OR LINK | TAB | FUNCTION |
|----------------|------------|---|
| Network | IP Setting | Configure the IP address for the Zyxel Device Ethernet interface. |
| | VLAN | Manage the Ethernet interface VLAN settings. |

4.3.5 Tables and Lists

The Web Configurator tables and lists are quite flexible and provide several options for how to display their entries.

4.3.5.1 Manipulating Table Display

Here are some of the ways you can manipulate the Web Configurator tables.

- 1 Click a column heading to sort the table's entries according to that column's criteria.

The screenshot shows a table titled "Radio Summary" with the following columns: #, Status, Profile Name, and Frequency Band. The "Profile Name" column header is circled in red. Below the table, there are navigation controls including "Page 1 of 1" and "Show 50 items".

| # | Status | Profile Name | Frequency Band |
|---|--------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 | 🔦 | Wiz_Radio_24G | 2.4G |
| 2 | 🔦 | Wiz_Radio_5G | 5G |
| 3 | 🔦 | default | 2.4G |
| 4 | 🔦 | default2 | 5G |

- 2 Click the down arrow next to a column heading for more options about how to display the entries. The options available vary depending on the type of fields in the column. Here are some examples of what you can do:
 - Sort in ascending alphabetical order
 - Sort in descending (reverse) alphabetical order
 - Select which columns to display
 - Group entries by field
 - Show entries in groups
 - Filter by mathematical operators (<, >, or =) or searching for text.

The screenshot shows the same "Radio Summary" table, but now the "Frequency Band" column header has a dropdown menu open. The menu options are: Sort Ascending, Sort Descending, Columns (with a sub-menu), Group By This Field, Show in Groups, and Filters. The "Columns" sub-menu is also open, showing checkboxes for Status, Profile Name, Frequency Band, and Operating Mode, all of which are checked. The "Operating Mode" column is visible in the table with the value "MBSSID".

| # | Status | Profile Name | Frequency Band | Operating Mode |
|---|--------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1 | 🔦 | Wiz_Radio_24G | | MBSSID |
| 2 | 🔦 | Wiz_Radio_5G | | MBSSID |
| 3 | 🔦 | default | | |
| 4 | 🔦 | default2 | | |

- 3 Select a column heading cell's right border and drag to re-size the column.

Table 25 Common Table Icons

| # | Status | Profile Name | Frequency Band | Operating Mode |
|---|--------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1 | 🔦 | Wiz_Radio_24G | 2.4G | MBSSID |
| 2 | 🔦 | Wiz_Radio_5G | 5G | MBSSID |
| 3 | 🔦 | default | 2.4G | MBSSID |
| 4 | 🔦 | default2 | 5G | MBSSID |
| 5 | 🔦 | test | 5G | MBSSID |

Here are descriptions for the most common table icons.

Table 26 Common Table Icons

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|---|
| Add | Click this to create a new entry. For features where the entry's position in the numbered list is important (features where the Zyxel Device applies the table's entries in order like the firewall for example), you can select an entry and click Add to create a new entry after the selected entry. |
| Edit | Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to open a screen where you can modify the entry's settings. In some tables you can just click a table entry and edit it directly in the table. For those types of tables small red triangles display for table entries with changes that you have not yet applied. |
| Remove | To remove an entry, select it and click Remove . The Zyxel Device confirms you want to remove it before doing so. |
| Activate | To turn on an entry, select it and click Activate . |
| Inactivate | To turn off an entry, select it and click Inactivate . |
| Object Reference | Select an entry and click Object Reference to open a screen that shows which settings use the entry. |

PART I

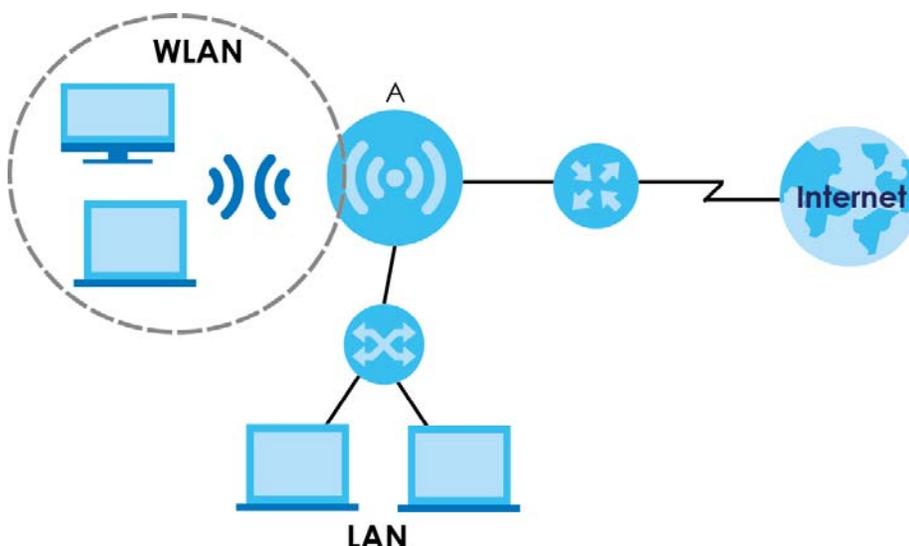
Standalone Configuration

CHAPTER 5

Standalone Configuration

5.1 Overview

The Zyxel Device is in standalone mode by default. Use the web configurator to manage and configure the Zyxel Device directly. As shown in the following figure, wireless clients can connect to the Zyxel Device (A) to access network resources.



5.2 Starting and Stopping the Zyxel Device

Here are some of the ways to start and stop the Zyxel Device.

Always use Maintenance > Shutdown or the `shutdown` command before you turn off the Zyxel Device or remove the power. Not doing so can cause the firmware to become corrupt.

Table 27 Starting and Stopping the Zyxel Device

| METHOD | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|--|
| Turning on the power | A cold start occurs when you turn on the power to the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device powers up, checks the hardware, and starts the system processes. |
| Rebooting the Zyxel Device | A warm start (without powering down and powering up again) occurs when you use the Reboot button in the Reboot screen or when you use the <code>reboot</code> command. The Zyxel Device writes all cached data to the local storage, stops the system processes, and then does a warm start. |

Table 27 Starting and Stopping the Zyxel Device

| METHOD | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Using the RESET button | If you press the RESET button on the back of the Zyxel Device, the Zyxel Device sets the configuration to its default values and then reboots. See Section 28.6 on page 243 for more information. |
| Clicking Maintenance > Shutdown > Shutdown or using the <code>shutdown</code> command | Clicking Maintenance > Shutdown > Shutdown or using the <code>shutdown</code> command writes all cached data to the local storage and stops the system processes. Wait for the Zyxel Device to shut down and then manually turn off or remove the power. It does not turn off the power. |
| Disconnecting the power | Power off occurs when you turn off the power to the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device simply turns off. It does not stop the system processes or write cached data to local storage. |

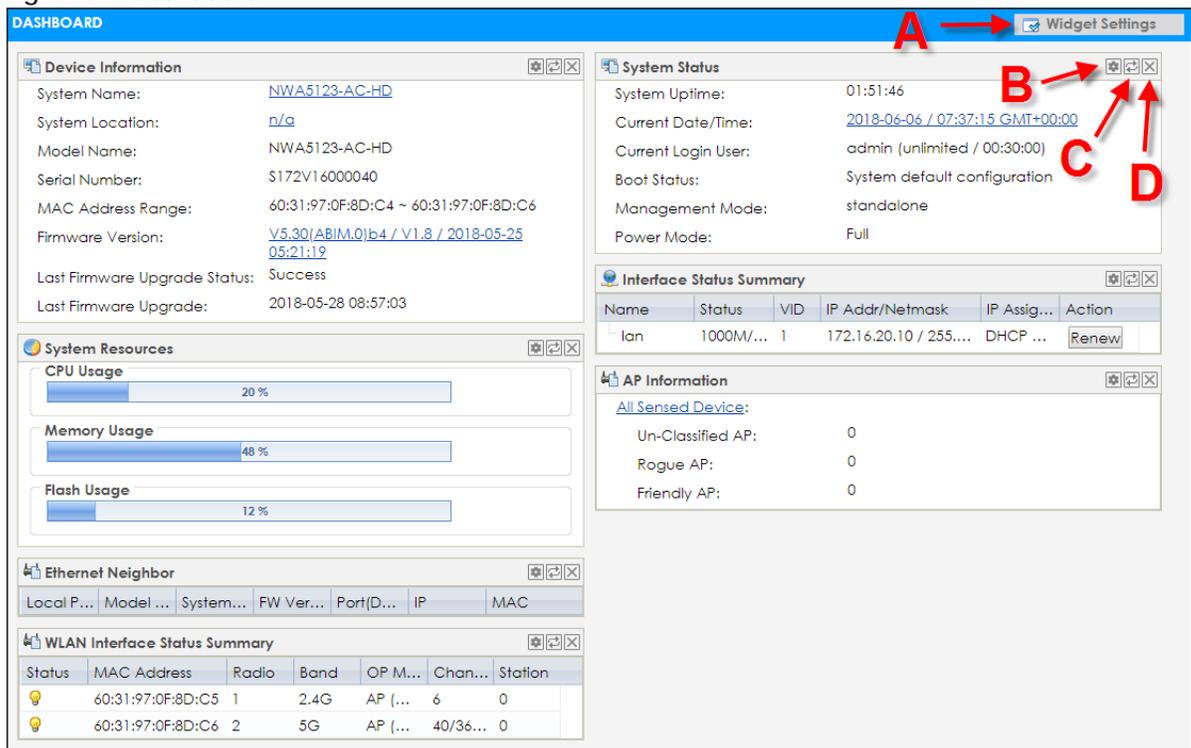
The Zyxel Device does not stop or start the system processes when you apply configuration files or run shell scripts although you may temporarily lose access to network resources.

CHAPTER 6

Dashboard

This screen displays general device information, system status, system resource usage, and interface status in widgets that you can re-arrange to suit your needs. You can also collapse, refresh, and close individual widgets.

Figure 31 Dashboard



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 28 Dashboard

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| Widget Settings (A) | Use this link to re-open closed widgets. Widgets that are already open appear grayed out. |
| Refresh Time Setting (B) | Set the interval for refreshing the information displayed in the widget. |
| Refresh Now (C) | Click this to update the widget's information immediately. |
| Close Widget (D) | Click this to close the widget. Use Widget Settings to re-open it. |
| Device Information | |
| System Name | This field displays the name used to identify the Zyxel Device on any network. Click the icon to open the screen where you can change it. |
| System Location | This field displays the location of the Zyxel Device. Click the icon to open the screen where you can change it. |

Table 28 Dashboard (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Model Name | This field displays the model name of this Zyxel Device. |
| Serial Number | This field displays the serial number of this Zyxel Device. |
| MAC Address Range | This field displays the MAC addresses used by the Zyxel Device. Each physical port or wireless radio has one MAC address. The first MAC address is assigned to the Ethernet LAN port, the second MAC address is assigned to the first radio, and so on. |
| Firmware Version | This field displays the version number and date of the firmware the Zyxel Device is currently running. Click the icon to open the screen where you can upload firmware. |
| Last Firmware Upgrade Status | This field displays whether the latest firmware update was successfully completed. |
| Last Firmware Upgrade | This field displays the date and time when the last firmware update was made. |
| System Resources | |
| CPU Usage | This field displays what percentage of the Zyxel Device's processing capability is currently being used. Hover your cursor over this field to display the Show CPU Usage icon that takes you to a chart of the Zyxel Device's recent CPU usage. |
| Memory Usage | This field displays what percentage of the Zyxel Device's RAM is currently being used. Hover your cursor over this field to display the Show Memory Usage icon that takes you to a chart of the Zyxel Device's recent memory usage. |
| Flash Usage | This field displays what percentage of the Zyxel Device's onboard flash memory is currently being used. |
| Ethernet Neighbor | |
| Local Port (Description) | This field displays the port of the Zyxel Device, on which the neighboring device is discovered. |
| Model Name | This field displays the model name of the discovered device. |
| System Name | This field displays the system name of the discovered device. |
| FW Version | This field displays the firmware version of the discovered device. |
| Port (Description) | This field displays the discovered device's port which is connected to the Zyxel Device. |
| IP | This field displays the IP address of the discovered device. Click the IP address to access and manage the discovered device using its web configurator. |
| MAC | This field displays the MAC address of the discovered device. |
| WDS (Wireless Distribution System) Uplink/Downlink Status | |
| MAC Address | This field displays the MAC address of the root AP or repeater to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS. |
| Radio | This field displays the radio number on the root AP or repeater to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS. |
| Channel | This field displays the channel number on the root AP or repeater to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS. |
| SSID | This field displays the name of the wireless network to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS. |
| Security Mode | This field displays which secure encryption methods is being used by the Zyxel Device to connect to the root AP or repeater using WDS. |
| Link Status | This field displays the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) and transmission/reception rate of the wireless connection in WDS. |
| System Status | |
| System Uptime | This field displays how long the Zyxel Device has been running since it last restarted or was turned on. |
| Current Date/Time | This field displays the current date and time in the Zyxel Device. The format is yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss. |

Table 28 Dashboard (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| Current Login User | This field displays the user name used to log in to the current session, the amount of reauthentication time remaining, and the amount of lease time remaining. |
| Boot Status | <p>This field displays details about the Zyxel Device's startup state.</p> <p>OK - The Zyxel Device started up successfully.</p> <p>Firmware update OK - A firmware update was successful.</p> <p>Problematic configuration after firmware update - The application of the configuration failed after a firmware upgrade.</p> <p>System default configuration - The Zyxel Device successfully applied the system default configuration. This occurs when the Zyxel Device starts for the first time or you intentionally reset the Zyxel Device to the system default settings.</p> <p>Fallback to lastgood configuration - The Zyxel Device was unable to apply the startup-config.conf configuration file and fell back to the lastgood.conf configuration file.</p> <p>Fallback to system default configuration - The Zyxel Device was unable to apply the lastgood.conf configuration file and fell back to the system default configuration file (system-default.conf).</p> <p>Booting in progress - The Zyxel Device is still applying the system configuration.</p> |
| Management Mode | This shows whether the Zyxel Device is set to work as a stand alone AP. |
| Power Mode | <p>This displays the Zyxel Device's power status.</p> <p>Full - the Zyxel Device receives power using a power adaptor and/or through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3af PoE plus.</p> <p>Limited - the Zyxel Device receives power through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3af PoE even when it is also connected to a power source using a power adaptor.</p> <p>When the Zyxel Device is in limited power mode, the Zyxel Device throughput decreases and has just one transmitting radio chain.</p> <p>It always shows Full if the Zyxel Device does not support power detection. See Section 1.4 on page 19.</p> |
| <u>Bluetooth</u> | <p><u>This field displays the Zyxel Device's Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) capability. Bluetooth Low Energy, which is also known as Bluetooth Smart, transmits less data over a shorter distance and consumes less power than classic Bluetooth. The Zyxel Device communicates with other BLE enabled devices using advertisements.</u></p> <p><u>N/A displays if the Zyxel Device does not support BLE.</u></p> <p><u>Unavailable displays if the Zyxel Device supports Bluetooth, but there is no BLE USB dongle connected to the USB port of the Zyxel Device. Some Zyxel Devices, such as the WAC5302D-S, need to have a supported BLE USB dongle attached to act as a beacon to broadcast packets.</u></p> <p><u>Available displays if the Zyxel Device supports Bluetooth, detects a BLE device and advertising is inactive.</u></p> <p><u>Advertising displays if the Zyxel Device supports Bluetooth, detects a BLE device and advertising is activated, which means the BLE device can broadcasts packets to every device around it.</u></p> |
| Interface Status Summary | If an Ethernet interface does not have any physical ports associated with it, its entry is displayed in light gray text. Click the Detail icon to go to a (more detailed) summary screen of interface statistics. |
| Name | This field displays the name of each interface. |

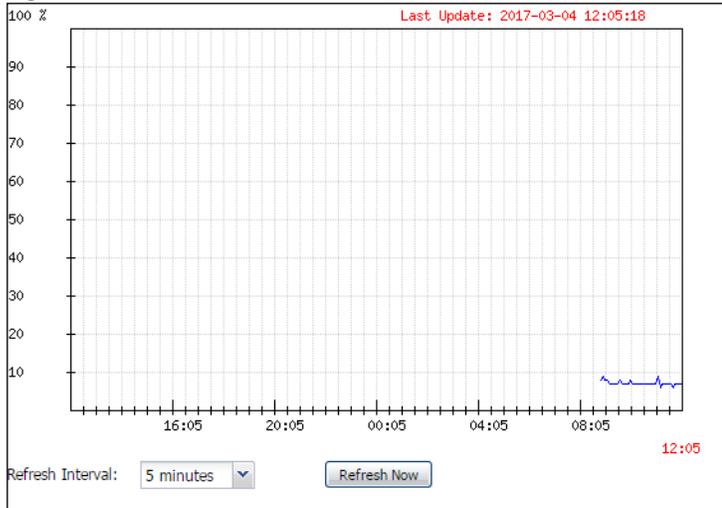
Table 28 Dashboard (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Status | This field displays the current status of each interface. The possible values depend on what type of interface it is. Inactive - The Ethernet interface is disabled. Down - The Ethernet interface is enabled but not connected. Speed / Duplex - The Ethernet interface is enabled and connected. This field displays the port speed and duplex setting (Full or Half). |
| VID | This field displays the VLAN ID to which the interface belongs. |
| IP Addr/Netmask | This field displays the current IP address and subnet mask assigned to the interface. If the IP address is 0.0.0.0, the interface is disabled or did not receive an IP address and subnet mask via DHCP. |
| IP Assignment | This field displays how the interface gets its IP address. Static - This interface has a static IP address. DHCP Client - This interface gets its IP address from a DHCP server. |
| Action | If the interface has a static IP address, this shows n/a . If the interface has a dynamic IP address, use this field to get or to update the IP address for the interface. Click Renew to send a new DHCP request to a DHCP server. |
| WLAN Interface Status Summary | This displays status information for the WLAN interface. |
| Status | This displays whether or not the WLAN interface is activated. |
| MAC Address | This displays the MAC address of the radio. |
| Radio | This indicates the radio number on the Zyxel Device. |
| Band | This indicates the wireless frequency band currently being used by the radio. This shows - when the radio is in monitor mode. |
| OP Mode | This indicates the radio's operating mode. Operating modes are AP (MBSSID) , MON (monitor), Root AP or Repeater . |
| Channel | This indicates the channel number the radio is using. |
| Antenna | This indicates the antenna orientation for the radio (Wall or Ceiling). This field is not available if the Zyxel Device does not allow you to adjust antenna orientation for each radio using the web configurator or a physical switch. Refer to Section 1.4 on page 19 to see if your Zyxel Device has an antenna switch. |
| Station | This displays the number of wireless clients connected to the Zyxel Device. |
| AP Information | This shows a summary of connected wireless Access Points (APs). |
| All Sensed Device | This sections displays a summary of all wireless devices detected by the network. Click the link to go to the Monitor > Wireless > Detected Device screen. |
| Un-Classified AP | This displays the number of detected unclassified APs. |
| Rogue AP | This displays the number of detected rogue APs. |
| Friendly AP | This displays the number of detected friendly APs. |

6.0.1 CPU Usage

Use this screen to look at a chart of the Zyxel Device's recent CPU usage. To access this screen, click **CPU Usage** in the dashboard.

Figure 32 Dashboard > CPU Usage



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 29 Dashboard > CPU Usage

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| % | The y-axis represents the percentage of CPU usage. |
| time | The x-axis shows the time period over which the CPU usage occurred |
| Refresh Interval | Enter how often you want this window to be automatically updated. |
| Refresh Now | Click this to update the information in the window right away. |

6.0.2 Memory Usage

Use this screen to look at a chart of the Zyxel Device's recent memory (RAM) usage. To access this screen, click **Memory Usage** in the dashboard.

Figure 33 Dashboard > Memory Usage



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 30 Dashboard > Memory Usage

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| % | The y-axis represents the percentage of RAM usage. |
| time | The x-axis shows the time period over which the RAM usage occurred |
| Refresh Interval | Enter how often you want this window to be automatically updated. |
| Refresh Now | Click this to update the information in the window right away. |

CHAPTER 7

Setup Wizard

7.1 Accessing the Wizard

When you log into the Web Configurator for the first time or when you reset the Zyxel Device to its default configuration, the wizard screen displays.

Note: If you have already configured the wizard screens and want to open it again, click the **Wizard** icon on the upper right corner of any Web Configurator screen.

7.2 Using the Wizard

This wizard helps you configure the Zyxel Device IP address, change time zone, daylight saving and radio settings, and edit an SSID profile to change general wireless and wireless security settings.

7.2.1 Step 1 Time Settings

Use this screen to configure the Zyxel Device's country code, time zone and daylight saving time.

- **Country Code:** Select the country where the Zyxel Device is located.

Note: The country code field is not available and you cannot change the country code if the Zyxel Device products comply with the U.S. laws, policies and regulations and are to be sold to the U.S. market.

- **Time Zone:** Select the time zone of your location. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
- **Enable Daylight Saving:** Select the option if you use Daylight Saving Time. Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts and ends.
- **Offset** allows you to specify how much the clock changes when daylight saving begins and ends. Enter a number from 1 to 5.5 (by 0.5 increments).

Click **Next** to proceed. Click **Cancel** to close the wizard without saving.

Figure 34 Wizard: Time Settings

Wizard setting

Step 1 Welcome to the Setup Wizard

Time Settings

Country Code: USA

Time Zone: (GMT 00:00) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbc

Enable Daylight Saving

Start Date: First Monday of January at 12 : 00

End Date: First Monday of January at 12 : 00

Offset: 1 Hours

Prev Next Cancel

7.2.2 Step 2 Password and Uplink Connection

Use this screen to configure the Zyxel Device's system password and IP address.

Change Password: Enter a new password and retype it to confirm.

Uplink Connection: Select **Auto (DHCP)** if the Zyxel Device is connected to a router with the DHCP server enabled. You then need to check the router for the IP address assigned to the Zyxel Device in order to access the Zyxel Device's web configurator again.

Otherwise, select **Static IP** when the Zyxel Device is NOT connected to a router or you want to assign it a fixed IP address. You will need to manually enter:

- the Zyxel Device's IP address and subnet mask.
- the IP address of the router that helps forward traffic.
- a DNS server's IP address. The Domain Name System (DNS) maps a domain name to an IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it.

Click **Prev** to return to the previous screen. Click **Next** to proceed. Click **Cancel** to close the wizard without saving.

Figure 35 Wizard: Change Password and Uplink Connection

The screenshot shows a wizard interface with five steps. Step 2 is highlighted in blue. The 'Change Password' section has two password input fields. The 'Uplink Connection' section has radio buttons for 'Auto(DHCP)' and 'Static IP'. The 'Static IP' option is selected, and it includes input fields for IP Address (192.168.1.2), Subnet Mask (255.255.252.0), Gateway (192.168.1.254), and DNS Server (empty). At the bottom right are 'Prev', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

7.2.3 Step 3 Radio

Use this screen to configure the Zyxel Device's radio transmitter(s).

- **Channel Selection:** Select **Auto** to have the Zyxel Device automatically choose a radio channel that has least interference. Otherwise, select **Manual** and specify a channel the Zyxel Device will use in the 2.4GHz or 5GHz wireless LAN. The options vary depending on the frequency band and the country you are in.
- **Maximum Output Power:** Enter the maximum output power of the Zyxel Device. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the Zyxel Device to reduce interference with other APs.

Note: Reducing the output power also reduces the Zyxel Device's effective broadcast radius.

Click **Prev** to return to the previous screen. Click **Next** to proceed. Click **Cancel** to close the wizard without saving.

Figure 36 Wizard: Radio

Wizard setting

Step 1 **Radio**

Step 2 Band: 2.4GHz
Channel Width: 20MHz
Channel Selection: Auto Manual 6
Maximum Output Power: 30 dBm(0~30)

Step 3

Step 4 Band: 5GHz
Channel Width: 20/40/80MHz
Channel Selection: Auto Manual 36
Maximum Output Power: 20 dBm(0~30)

Step 5

Prev Next Cancel

7.2.4 Step 4 SSID

Use this screen to enable, disable or edit an SSID profile.

Select an SSID profile and click the **Status** switch to turn it on or off. To change an SSID profile's settings, such as the SSID (WiFi network name) and WiFi password, double-click the SSID profile entry from the list. See [Section 7.2.4.1 on page 77](#) for more information.

Note: You cannot add or remove an SSID profile after running the setup wizard.

Figure 37 Wizard: SSID

Wizard Setting

Step 1 **SSID**

Step 2

Step 3

Step 4

Step 5

| # | Status | SSID | Security Mode | Band Mode | VLAN ID |
|---|-------------------------------------|-------|-----------------|-----------|---------|
| 1 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> ON | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |
| 2 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> ON | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |
| 3 | <input type="radio"/> OFF | Zyxel | WPA2-Enterprise | Dual Band | 1 |
| 4 | <input type="radio"/> OFF | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |
| 5 | <input type="radio"/> OFF | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |
| 6 | <input type="radio"/> OFF | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |
| 7 | <input type="radio"/> OFF | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |
| 8 | <input type="radio"/> OFF | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |

Prev Next Cancel

7.2.4.1 Edit SSID Profile

Use this screen to configure an SSID profile.

The screen varies depending on the security type you selected.

- **SSID:** Enter a descriptive name of up to 32 printable characters for the wireless LAN.
- **VLAN ID:** Enter a VLAN ID for the Zyxel Device to use to tag traffic originating from this SSID.
Band Mode: Select the wireless band which this profile should use. 2.4 GHz is the frequency used by IEEE 802.11b/g/n wireless clients. 5 GHz is the frequency used by IEEE 802.11ac/a/n wireless clients.
- **Security Type:** Select **WPA2** to add security on this wireless network. Otherwise, select **OPEN** to allow any wireless client to associate this network without authentication.
- **PSK (Pre-shared Key) Personal:** If you set **Security Type** to **WPA2** and select **PSK Personal**, enter a pre-shared key of between 8 and 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols) or 64 hexadecimal characters.
- **802.1X Enterprise:** Select **this option -802.1X** and the **Primary / Secondary RADIUS Server** check box to have the Zyxel Device use the specified RADIUS server. You have to enter the IP address, port number and shared secret password of the RADIUS server to be used for authentication.

Click **OK** to proceed. Click **Cancel** to close the screen without saving.

Figure 38 Wizard: SSID: Edit (WPA2-PSK Personal)

Edit SSID Profile

SSID:

Status: ▼

VLAN ID: (1~4094)

Band Mode: ▼

Security Type: ▼

Personal
Secret:

Enterprise

Figure 39 Wizard: SSID: Edit (802.1x/WPA2-Enterprise)

Edit SSID Profile

SSID:

Status:

VLAN ID: (1~4094)

Band Mode:

Security Type:

Personal

Enterprise

Primary RADIUS Server

RADIUS Server IP Address:

RADIUS Server Port: (1~65535)

RADIUS Server Secret:

Secondary Radius Server

RADIUS Server IP Address:

RADIUS Server Port: (1~65535)

RADIUS Server Secret:

OK **Cancel**

7.2.5 Summary

Use this screen to check whether what you have configured is correct. Click **Save** to apply your settings and complete the wizard setup. Otherwise, click **Prev** to return to the previous screen or click **Cancel** to close the wizard without saving.

Figure 40 Wizard: Summary

Wizard Setting

Step 1 **Summary**

Time Zone: (GMT+08:00) Beijing, Hong Kong, Perth, Singapore, Taipei

Step 2 Daylight Saving: Disable

Management IP: Auto(DHCP)

Step 3 2.4G Radio: Auto

5G Radio: Auto

Step 4 SSID

| # | Status | SSID | Security Mode | Band Mode | VLAN ID |
|---|-------------------------------------|-------|---------------|-----------|---------|
| 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |
| 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Zyxel | WPA2-PSK | Dual Band | 1 |

Step 5

Prev **Save** **Cancel**

CHAPTER 8

Monitor

8.1 Overview

Use the **Monitor** screens to check status and statistics information.

8.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **Network Status** screen ([Section 8.3 on page 81](#)) displays general LAN interface information and packet statistics.
- The **AP Information > Radio List** screen ([Section 8.4 on page 83](#)) displays statistics about the wireless radio transmitters in the Zyxel Device.
- The **Station Info** screen ([Section 8.5 on page 87](#)) displays statistics pertaining to the associated stations.
- The **WDS Link Info** screen ([Section 8.6 on page 88](#)) displays statistics about the Zyxel Device's WDS (Wireless Distribution System) connections.
- The **Detected Device** screen ([Section 8.7 on page 89](#)) displays information about suspected rogue APs.
- The **View Log** screen ([Section 8.8 on page 92](#)) displays the Zyxel Device's current log messages. You can change the way the log is displayed, you can e-mail the log, and you can also clear the log in this screen.

8.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through the chapter.

Rogue AP

Rogue APs are wireless access points operating in a network's coverage area that are not under the control of the network's administrators, and can open up holes in a network's security. See [Chapter 14 on page 151](#) for details.

Friendly AP

Friendly APs are other wireless access points that are detected in your network, as well as any others that you know are not a threat (those from neighboring networks, for example). See [Chapter 14 on page 151](#) for details.

8.3 Network Status

Use this screen to look at general Ethernet interface information and packet statistics. To access this screen, click **Monitor > Network Status**.

Figure 41 Monitor > Network Status

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 31 Monitor > Network Status

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Interface Summary IPv6 Interface Summary | Use the Interface Summary section for IPv4 network settings. Use the IPv6 Interface Summary section for IPv6 network settings if you connect your Zyxel Device to an IPv6 network. Both sections have similar fields as described below. |
| Name | This field displays the name of the physical Ethernet port on the Zyxel Device. |
| Status | This field displays the current status of each physical port on the Zyxel Device. Down - The port is not connected. Speed / Duplex - The port is connected. This field displays the port speed and duplex setting (Full or Half). |
| VID | This field displays the VLAN ID to which the port belongs. |
| IP Addr/Netmask IP Address | This field displays the current IP address (and subnet mask) of the interface. If the IP address is 0.0.0.0 (in the IPv4 network) or :: (in the IPv6 network), the interface does not have an IP address yet. |
| IP Assignment | This field displays how the interface gets its IPv4 address. Static - This interface has a static IPv4 address. DHCP Client - This interface gets its IPv4 address from a DHCP server. |
| Action | Use this field to get or to update the IP address for the interface. Click Renew to send a new DHCP request to a DHCP server. If the interface cannot use one of these ways to get or to update its IP address, this field displays n/a . |
| Port Statistics Table | |

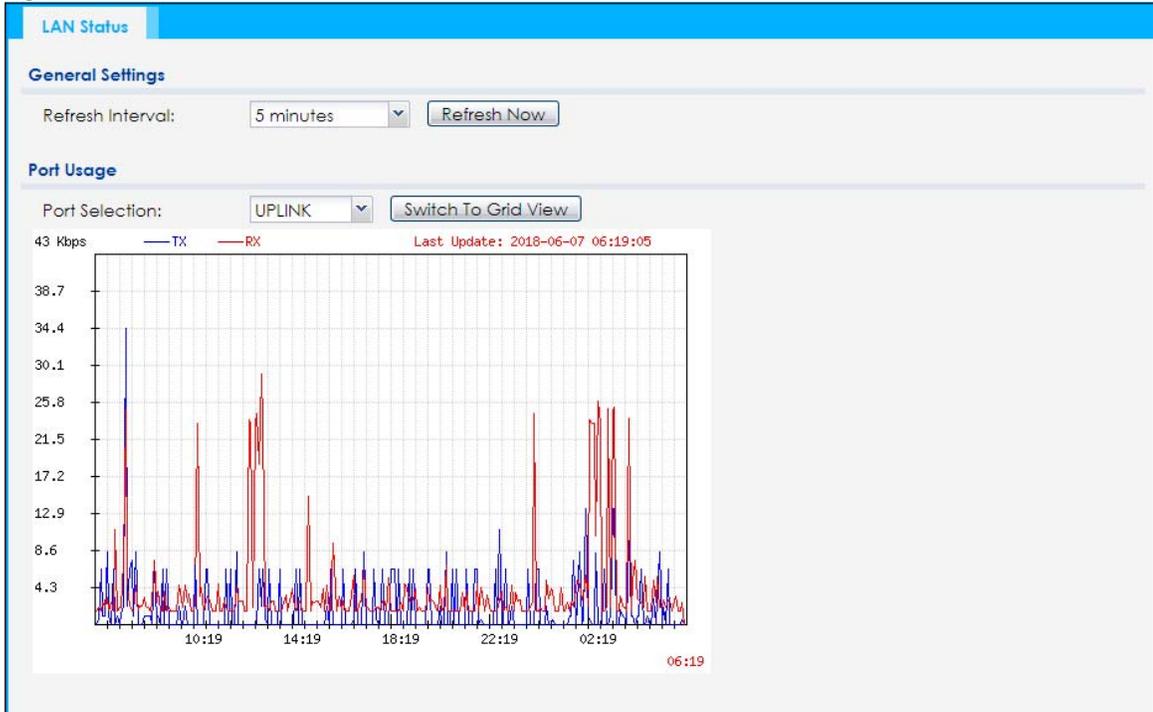
Table 31 Monitor > Network Status (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|--|
| Poll Interval | Enter how often you want this window to be updated automatically, and click Set Interval . |
| Set Interval | Click this to set the Poll Interval the screen uses. |
| Stop | Click this to stop the window from updating automatically. You can start it again by setting the Poll Interval and clicking Set Interval . |
| Switch to Graphic View | Click this to display the port statistics as a line graph. |
| Name | This field displays the name of the interface. |
| Status | This field displays the current status of the physical port. Down - The physical port is not connected. Speed / Duplex - The physical port is connected. This field displays the port speed and duplex setting (Full or Half). |
| TxPkts | This field displays the number of packets transmitted from the Zyxel Device on the physical port since it was last connected. |
| RxPkts | This field displays the number of packets received by the Zyxel Device on the physical port since it was last connected. |
| Tx Bcast | This field displays the number of broadcast packets transmitted from the Zyxel Device on the physical port since it was last connected. |
| Rx Bcast | This field displays the number of broadcast packets received by the Zyxel Device on the physical port since it was last connected. |
| Collisions | This field displays the number of collisions on the physical port since it was last connected. |
| Tx | This field displays the transmission speed, in bytes per second, on the physical port in the one-second interval before the screen updated. |
| Rx | This field displays the reception speed, in bytes per second, on the physical port in the one-second interval before the screen updated. |
| Up Time | This field displays how long the physical port has been connected. |
| System Up Time | This field displays how long the Zyxel Device has been running since it last restarted or was turned on. |

8.3.1 Port Statistics Graph

Use the port statistics graph to look at a line graph of packet statistics for the Ethernet port. To view, click **Monitor > Network Status** and then the **Switch to Graphic View** button.

Figure 42 Monitor > Network Status > Switch to Graphic View



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 32 Monitor > Network Status > Switch to Graphic View

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------|--|
| Refresh Interval | Enter how often you want this window to be automatically updated. |
| Refresh Now | Click this to update the information in the window right away. |
| Port Selection | Select the Ethernet port for which you want to view the packet statistics. |
| Switch to Grid View | Click this to display the port statistics as a table. |
| Kbps/Mbps | The y-axis represents the speed of transmission or reception. |
| Time | The x-axis shows the time period over which the transmission or reception occurred. |
| TX | This line represents traffic transmitted from the Zyxel Device on the physical port since it was last connected. |
| RX | This line represents the traffic received by the Zyxel Device on the physical port since it was last connected. |
| Last Update | This field displays the date and time the information in the window was last updated. |

8.4 Radio List

Use this screen to view statistics for the Zyxel Device's wireless radio transmitters. To access this screen, click **Monitor > Wireless > AP Information > Radio List**.

Figure 43 Monitor > Wireless > AP Information > Radio List (for Zyxel Device that supports WDS)

| St... | Loadi... | Freque... | Chan... | Tran... | Sta... | Upload | Downl... | MAC Addr... | R... | OP Mo... | AP / WDS Profile |
|-------|----------|-----------|----------|---------|--------|--------|----------|---------------|------|----------|-------------------|
| 💡 | - | 2.4G | 1 | 25 | 0 | 0 | 670310 | 60:31:97:0... | 1 | AP (M... | default / default |
| 💡 | - | 5G | 161/1... | 28 | 0 | 0 | 668418 | 60:31:97:0... | 2 | AP (M... | default2 / def... |

Figure 44 Monitor > Wireless > AP Information > Radio List (for Zyxel Device that doesn't support WDS)

| St... | Loadi... | Freque... | Cha... | Tran... | St... | Upload | Downl... | MAC Ad... | R... | OP M... | Profile |
|-------|----------|-----------|---------|---------|-------|--------|----------|--------------|------|----------|----------|
| 💡 | - | 2.4G | 6 | 29 | 1 | 77620 | 751564 | BC:CF:4F:... | 1 | AP (M... | default |
| 💡 | - | 5G | 36/4... | 26 | 0 | 0 | 0 | BC:CF:4F:... | 2 | AP (M... | default2 |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 33 Monitor > Wireless > AP Information > Radio List

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| More Information | Click this to view additional information about the selected radio's wireless traffic and station count. Information spans a 24 hour period. |
| Status | This displays whether or not the radio is enabled. |
| Loading | This indicates the AP's load balance status (UnderLoad or OverLoad) when load balancing is enabled on the Zyxel Device. Otherwise, it shows - when load balancing is disabled or the radio is in monitor mode. |
| MAC Address | This displays the MAC address of the radio. |
| Radio | This indicates the radio number on the Zyxel Device to which it belongs. |
| OP Mode | This indicates the radio's operating mode. Operating modes are AP (MBSSID) , MONITOR , Root AP or Repeater |
| AP/WDS Profile | This indicates the AP profile name and WDS profile name to which the radio belongs. This field is available only on the Zyxel Device that supports WDS. |
| Profile | This indicates the AP profile name to which the radio belongs. This field is available only on the Zyxel Device that doesn't support WDS. |
| Frequency Band | This indicates the wireless frequency band currently being used by the radio. This shows - when the radio is in monitor mode. |
| Channel | This indicates the radio's channel ID. |

Table 33 Monitor > Wireless > AP Information > Radio List (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Transmit Power | This displays the output power of the radio. |
| Station | This displays the number of wireless clients connected to this radio on the Zyxel Device. |
| Upload | This displays the total number of packets received by the radio. |
| Download | This displays the total number of packets transmitted by the radio. |

8.4.1 AP Mode Radio Information

This screen allows you to view a selected radio's SSID details, wireless traffic statistics and station count for the preceding 24 hours. To access this window, select a radio and click the **More Information** button in the **Radio List** screen.

Figure 45 Monitor > Wireless > AP Information > Radio List > More Information

AP Mode Radio Information ? X

SSID Detail

| # | SSID Name | BSSID | Security Mode | VLAN |
|---|---------------|-------------------|---------------|------|
| 1 | Zyxel-2 | 58:8B:F3:90:F6:81 | WPA2-PSK | 1 |
| 2 | Zyxel-3 | 5A:81:F3:90:F6:82 | WPA2-PSK | 1 |
| 3 | Zyxel1123acv2 | 5A:81:F3:90:F6:83 | WPA2-PSK | 1 |

Page 1 of 1 | Show 50 items | Displaying 1 - 3 of 3

Traffic Statistics

168 Kbps — TX — RX Last Update: 2017-06-30 16:46:02

16:46

Note:
The diagram is updated in 5~10 minutes periodically, it may not up to date.

Station Count

100 Stations Last Update: 2017-06-30 16:46:02

16:46

Note:
The diagram is updated in 5~10 minutes periodically, it may not up to date.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 34 Monitor > Wireless > AP Information > Radio List > More Information

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|--|
| SSID Detail | This list shows information about all the wireless clients that have connected to the specified radio over the preceding 24 hours. |
| # | This is the items sequential number in the list. It has no bearing on the actual data in this list. |
| SSID Name | This displays an SSID associated with this radio. There can be up to eight maximum. |
| BSSID | This displays a BSSID associated with this radio. The BSSID is tied to the SSID. |
| Security Mode | This displays the security mode in which the SSID is operating. |
| VLAN | This displays the VLAN ID associated with the SSID. |
| Traffic Statistics | This graph displays the overall traffic information of the radio over the preceding 24 hours. |
| Kbps/Mbps | This y-axis represents the amount of data moved across this radio in megabytes per second. |
| Time | This x-axis represents the amount of time over which the data moved across this radio. |
| Station Count | This graph displays the connected station information of the radio over the preceding 24 hours. |
| Stations | The y-axis represents the number of connected stations. |
| Time | The x-axis shows the time period over which a station was connected. |
| Last Update | This field displays the date and time the information in the window was last updated. |
| OK | Click this to close this window. |
| Cancel | Click this to close this window. |

8.5 Station List

Use this screen to view statistics pertaining to the associated stations (or "wireless clients"). Click **Monitor > Wireless > Station Info** to access this screen.

Figure 46 Monitor > Wireless > Station Info

| # | IP Addr... | MAC Ad... | Radio | Capability | SSID Name | Security ... | Signal Str... | Tx R... | Rx R... | Associati... |
|---|------------|-------------|-------|------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|---------|---------|--------------|
| 1 | 172.16... | 00:19:cb... | 1 | 802.11b/g | Zyxel1123acv2 | WPA2-PSK | -50dBm | 1M | 54M | 10:34:18 ... |

Page 1 of 1 | Show 50 items | Displaying 1 - 1 of 1

Refresh

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 35 Monitor > Wireless > Station Info

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|--|
| # | This is the station's index number in this list. |
| IP Address | This is the station's IP address. |

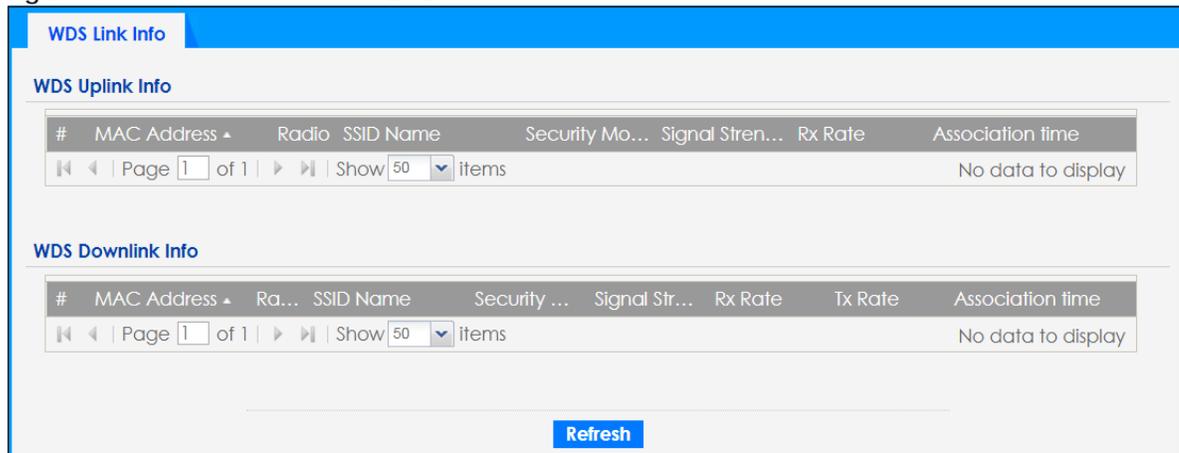
Table 35 Monitor > Wireless > Station Info (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|---|
| MAC Address | This is the station's MAC address. |
| Radio | This is the radio number on the Zyxel Device to which the station is connected. |
| Capability | This displays the supported standard currently being used by the station or the standards supported by the station. |
| 802.11 Features | This displays whether the station supports IEEE802.11r, IEEE 802.11k, IEEE 802.11v or none of the above (N/A). |
| SSID Name | This indicates the name of the wireless network to which the station is connected. A single AP can have multiple SSIDs or networks. |
| Security Mode | This indicates which secure encryption methods is being used by the station to connect to the network. |
| Signal Strength | This is the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) of the station's wireless connection. |
| Tx Rate | This is the maximum transmission rate of the station. |
| Rx Rate | This is the maximum reception rate of the station. |
| Association Time | This displays the time the station first associated with the Zyxel Device's wireless network. |
| Refresh | Click this to refresh the items displayed on this page. |

8.6 WDS Link Info

Use this screen to view the WDS traffic statistics between the Zyxel Device and a root AP or repeaters. See [Section 1.2 on page 13](#) to know more about WDS. Click **Monitor > Wireless > WDS Link Info** to access this screen.

Figure 47 Monitor > Wireless > WDS Link Info



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 36 Monitor > Wireless > WDS Link Info

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|---|
| WDS Uplink Info | Uplink refers to the WDS link from the repeaters to the root AP. |
| WDS Downlink Info | Downlink refers to the WDS link from the root AP to the repeaters. When the Zyxel Device is in root AP mode and connected to a repeater, only the downlink information is displayed. When the Zyxel Device is in repeater mode and connected to a root AP directly or via another repeater, the uplink information is displayed. When the Zyxel Device is in repeater mode and connected to a root AP and other repeater(s), both the uplink and downlink information would be displayed. |
| # | This is the index number of the root AP or repeater in this list. |
| MAC Address | This is the MAC address of the root AP or repeater to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS. |
| Radio | This is the radio number on the root AP or repeater to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS. |
| SSID Name | This indicates the name of the wireless network to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS. |
| Security Mode | This indicates which secure encryption methods is being used by the Zyxel Device to connect to the root AP or repeater using WDS. |
| Signal Strength | This is the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) of the wireless connection in WDS. |
| Tx Rate | This is the maximum transmission rate of the root AP or repeater to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS. |
| Rx Rate | This is the maximum reception rate of the root AP or repeater to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS. |
| Association Time | This displays the time the Zyxel Device first associated with the wireless network using WDS. |
| Refresh | Click this to refresh the items displayed on this page. |

8.7 Detected Device

Use this screen to view information about surrounding APs which you could mark as Rogue or Friendly. Click **Monitor > Wireless > Detected Device** to access this screen. Not all Zyxel Devices support monitor mode (see [Section 1.4 on page 19](#)). For more information about Rogue APs, see [Section 10.3 on page 110](#).

Note: If the Zyxel Device supports monitor mode, the radio or at least one of the Zyxel Device's radio must be set to monitor mode (in the **Wireless > AP Management** screen) in order to detect other wireless devices in its vicinity.

If the Zyxel Device doesn't support monitor mode, turn on rogue AP detection in the **Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP** screen to detect other APs.

Figure 48 Monitor > Wireless > Detected Device (for Zyxel Device that supports Monitor mode)

| Detected Device | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------|---------------|------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------|---------|---------|------------|------------|
| Detected Device | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> Mark as Rogue AP <input checked="" type="radio"/> Mark as Friendly AP | | | | | | | | | | |
| # | Stat... | Device | Role | MAC Address | SSID Name | Channe... | 802... | Sec... | Descrip... | Last Seen |
| 1 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 00:02:6F:12:34:56 | VIDEOTRON... | 10 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 2 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 00:02:CF:AF:69:DC | SDD1-85662... | 8 | IEEE... | TKIP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 3 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 00:13:49:11:66:8C | Zy_private_... | 5 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 4 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 00:13:49:F1:2B:88 | \343\204\2... | 5 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 5 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 00:17:16:44:33:70 | xxxxxx2 | 10 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 6 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 00:19:CB:11:44:D0 | wpa | 10 | IEEE... | TKIP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 7 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 00:25:36:AC:25:78 | 418N v2 | 9 | | WEP | | Mon Jul... |
| 8 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 00:50:18:D2:A2:E6 | ZyXEL_A2E6 | 5 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 9 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 00:AA:BB:01:23:40 | Zyxel_AP | 6 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 10 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 02:11:22:33:44:88 | aisfibre_334... | 8 | IEEE... | TKIP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 11 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 02:17:16:44:33:70 | zzzzzzzz222 | 10 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 12 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 02:AA:BB:11:23:40 | HT_AP1 | 6 | IEEE... | None | | Mon Jul... |
| 13 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 02:AA:BB:21:23:40 | HT_AP2 | 6 | IEEE... | None | | Mon Jul... |
| 14 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 02:AA:BB:31:23:40 | HT_AP3 | 6 | IEEE... | None | | Mon Jul... |
| 15 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 04:BF:6D:5A:ED:10 | VIDEOTRON... | 5 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 16 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 10:11:12:13:14:00 | GO_GO_ZY... | 5 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 17 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 10:7B:EF:C5:AC:85 | Elisa_999999... | 11 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 18 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 14:91:82:16:24:9A | 1G_Ext | 11 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 19 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 14:91:82:81:AA:21 | Kelly%&5%3... | 9 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |
| 20 | 🔆 | infrastruc... | | 14:91:82:82:30:99 | Kelly%&5%3... | 8 | IEEE... | WP... | | Mon Jul... |

Figure 49 Monitor > Wireless > Detected Device (for Zyxel Device that doesn't support Monitor mode)

Detected Device

Discovered APs

| | |
|---------------------|-----|
| Rogue AP: | 0 |
| Suspected rogue AP: | 37 |
| Friendly AP: | 1 |
| Un-classified AP: | 310 |

Detected Device

Mark as Rogue AP Mark as Friendly AP

| # | Role | Classified by | MAC Address | SSID Name | Chann... | 802... | Sec... | Descrip... | Last Seen |
|----|----------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------|----------|---------|--------|------------|-----------|
| 21 | | | A0:E4:CB:7C:FB:88 | ZyXEL_CSO | 6 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 22 | | | 5C:F4:AB:AB:59:05 | VIDEOTRON... | 153 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 23 | | | B0:B2:DC:6F:55:BE | test_IOS | 36 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 24 | | | 90:EF:68:FB:27:21 | 6515_55 | 157 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 25 | | | 10:7B:EF:C5:AC:85 | Elisa_99999... | 11 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 26 | | | 5A:67:F3:91:12:6B | Unizyx_WLAN | 1 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 27 | | | 60:31:97:10:BF:F5 | Fioptics00049 | 4 | IEEE... | WP... | Thu Jan... | |
| 28 | Suspected r... | Hidden SSID | 1C:74:0D:FF:D3:... | | 153 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 29 | Friendly AP | | 60:31:97:7D:5B:51 | Nebula Ac... | 1 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 30 | | | 1C:74:0D:FF:D3:B1 | ADHBU_5G | 36 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 31 | | | 60:31:97:7D:5B:2A | SSID1 | 48 | IEEE... | None | Mon Jul... | |
| 32 | | | 4E:AB:FF:7F:D7:AC | ZyXEL_CSO... | 36 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 33 | | | A2:88:CB:7C:FB:89 | ZyXEL_CSO... | 6 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 34 | Suspected r... | Hidden SSID | 72:EC:A3:74:CB:57 | | 157 | IEEE... | WP... | Thu Jan... | |
| 35 | Suspected r... | Hidden SSID | 1C:74:0D:FF:D3:... | | 161 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 36 | | | 5A:67:F3:91:12:69 | Unizyx_MA... | 1 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 37 | Suspected r... | Hidden SSID | 1C:74:0D:FF:D2:B4 | | 161 | IEEE... | WP... | Thu Jan... | |
| 38 | | | B0:B2:DC:C2:15:00 | ZT01746_88... | 6 | IEEE... | WP... | Mon Jul... | |
| 39 | | | 62:91:97:73:B5:92 | e-Nebula-... | 44 | IEEE... | None | Mon Jul... | |
| 40 | | | E8:37:7A:86:E7:19 | ZyXEL86E71... | 149 | IEEE... | WP... | Thu Jan... | |

Page 2 of 18 | Show 20 items | Displaying 21 - 40 of 348

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 37 Monitor > Wireless > Detected Device

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|--|
| Discovered APs | |
| Rogue AP | This shows how many devices are detected as rogue APs. |
| Suspected rogue AP | This shows how many devices are detected as possible rogue APs based on the classification rule(s) in Section 10.3 on page 110 . |
| Friendly AP | This shows how many devices are detected as friendly APs. |
| Un-classified AP | This shows how many devices are detected, but have not been classified as either Rogue or Friendly by the Zyxel Device. |
| Detect Now | Click this button for the Zyxel Device to scan for APs in the network. |
| Detected Device | |

Table 37 Monitor > Wireless > Detected Device (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------|--|
| Mark as Rogue AP | Click this button to mark the selected AP as a rogue AP. For more on managing rogue APs, see the Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP screen (Section 10.3 on page 110). |
| Mark as Friendly AP | Click this button to mark the selected AP as a friendly AP. For more on managing friendly APs, see the Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP screen (Section 10.3 on page 110). |
| # | This is the detected device's index number in this list. |
| Status | This indicates the detected device's status. |
| Device | This indicates the type of device detected. |
| Role | This indicates the detected device's role (such as friendly or rogue). |
| Classified by | This indicates the detected device's classification rule. |
| MAC Address | This indicates the detected device's MAC address. |
| SSID Name | This indicates the detected device's SSID. |
| Channel ID | This indicates the detected device's channel ID. |
| 802.11 Mode | This indicates the 802.11 mode (a/b/g/n/ac/ax) transmitted by the detected device. |
| Security | This indicates the encryption method (if any) used by the detected device. |
| Description | This displays the detected device's description. For more on managing friendly and rogue APs, see the Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP screen (Section 10.3 on page 110). |
| Last Seen | This indicates the last time the device was detected by the Zyxel Device. |
| Refresh | Click this to refresh the items displayed on this page. |

8.8 View Log

Log messages are stored in two separate logs, one for regular log messages and one for debugging messages. In the regular log, you can look at all the log messages by selecting **All Logs**, or you can select a specific category of log messages (for example, user). You can also look at the debugging log by selecting **Debug Log**. All debugging messages have the same priority.

To access this screen, click **Monitor > Log**. The log is displayed in the following screen.

Note: When a log reaches the maximum number of log messages, new log messages automatically overwrite existing log messages, starting with the oldest existing log message first.

Events that generate an alert (as well as a log message) display in red. Regular logs display in black. Click a column's heading cell to sort the table entries by that column's criteria. Click the heading cell again to reverse the sort order.

The Web Configurator saves the filter settings once you click **Search**. If you leave the **View Log** screen and return to it later, the last filter settings would still apply.

Figure 50 Monitor > Log > View Log

View Log

Hide Filter

Logs

Display: Priority:

Source Address: Destination Address:

Source Interface: Destination Interface:

Protocol: Keyword:

| # | Time | C... | Message | Source | Destination | Note |
|----|-------------------|------|---|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 | 2017-07-03 05:... | U... | Administrator admin from http/https has lo... | 172.17.1.1 | 172.16.1.4 | Account: ... |
| 2 | 2017-07-03 04:... | ... | Station: B8:53:AC:14:73:B6 has death by ST... | | | |
| 3 | 2017-07-03 04:... | U... | Administrator admin from http/https has be... | 172.17.1.1 | 172.16.1.4 | Account: ... |
| 4 | 2017-07-03 04:... | ... | Station: 40:40:A7:3C:9B:3D has death by S... | | | |
| 5 | 2017-07-03 04:... | ... | Station: B8:53:AC:14:73:B6 has associated o... | | | |
| 6 | 2017-07-03 04:... | ... | Station: 2C:F0:A2:93:5F:02 has death by ST... | | | |
| 7 | 2017-07-03 04:... | ... | Station: 2C:F0:A2:93:5F:02 has associated o... | | | |
| 8 | 2017-07-03 04:... | ... | Station: 2C:F0:A2:93:5F:02 has death by ST... | | | |
| 9 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 2C:F0:A2:93:5F:02 has death by ST... | | | |
| 10 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 2C:F0:A2:93:5F:02 has death by D... | | | |
| 11 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 40:40:A7:3C:9B:3D has associated ... | | | |
| 12 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 1C:7B:21:BF:FF:81 has death by ST... | | | |
| 13 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 2C:F0:A2:93:5F:02 has disassoc by S... | | | |
| 14 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 2C:F0:A2:93:5F:02 has associated o... | | | |
| 15 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 2C:F0:A2:93:5F:02 has death by D... | | | |
| 16 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 2C:F0:A2:93:5F:02 has associated o... | | | |
| 17 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 1C:7B:21:BF:FF:81 has disassoc by S... | | | |
| 18 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 1C:7B:21:BF:FF:81 has associated o... | | | |
| 19 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 1C:7B:21:BF:FF:81 has death by D... | | | |
| 20 | 2017-07-03 03:... | ... | Station: 1C:7B:21:BF:FF:81 has disassoc by S... | | | |

Page 1 of 4 Show 20 items Displaying 1 - 20 of 61

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 38 Monitor > Log > View Log

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|---|
| Show Filter / Hide Filter | Click this button to show or hide the filter settings. If the filter settings are hidden, the Display , Email Log Now , Refresh , and Clear Log fields are available. If the filter settings are shown, the Display , Priority , Source Address , Destination Address , Source Interface , Destination Interface , Protocol , Keyword , and Search fields are available. |
| Display | Select the category of log message(s) you want to view. You can also view All Logs at one time, or you can view the Debug Log . |
| Priority | This displays when you show the filter. Select the priority of log messages to display. The log displays the log messages with this priority or higher. Choices are: any , emerg , alert , crit , error , warn , notice , and info , from highest priority to lowest priority. This field is read-only if the Category is Debug Log . |
| Source Address | This displays when you show the filter. Type the source IP address of the incoming packet that generated the log message. Do not include the port in this filter. |

Table 38 Monitor > Log > View Log (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|--|
| Destination Address | This displays when you show the filter. Type the IP address of the destination of the incoming packet when the log message was generated. Do not include the port in this filter. |
| Source Interface | This displays when you show the filter. Select the source interface of the packet that generated the log message. |
| Destination Interface | This displays when you show the filter. Select the destination interface of the packet that generated the log message. |
| Protocol | This displays when you show the filter. Select a service protocol whose log messages you would like to see. |
| Keyword | This displays when you show the filter. Type a keyword to look for in the Message , Source , Destination and Note fields. If a match is found in any field, the log message is displayed. You can use up to 63 alphanumeric characters and the underscore, as well as punctuation marks ()' ,:;! +-*/= #\$\$% @ ; the period, double quotes, and brackets are not allowed. |
| Search | This displays when you show the filter. Click this button to update the log using the current filter settings. |
| Email Log Now | Click this button to send log messages to the Active e-mail addresses specified in the Send Log To field on the Configuration > Log & Report > Log Settings screen. |
| Refresh | Click this to update the list of logs. |
| Clear Log | Click this button to clear the whole log, regardless of what is currently displayed on the screen. |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific log message. |
| Time | This field displays the time the log message was recorded. |
| Priority | This field displays the priority of the log message. It has the same range of values as the Priority field above. |
| Category | This field displays the log that generated the log message. It is the same value used in the Display and (other) Category fields. |
| Message | This field displays the reason the log message was generated. The text "[count=x]", where <i>x</i> is a number, appears at the end of the Message field if log consolidation is turned on and multiple entries were aggregated to generate into this one. |
| Source | This field displays the source IP address and the port number in the event that generated the log message. |
| Source Interface | This field displays the source interface of the packet that generated the log message. |
| Destination | This field displays the destination IP address and the port number of the event that generated the log message. |
| Destination Interface | This field displays the destination interface of the packet that generated the log message. |
| Protocol | This field displays the service protocol in the event that generated the log message. |
| Note | This field displays any additional information about the log message. |

CHAPTER 9

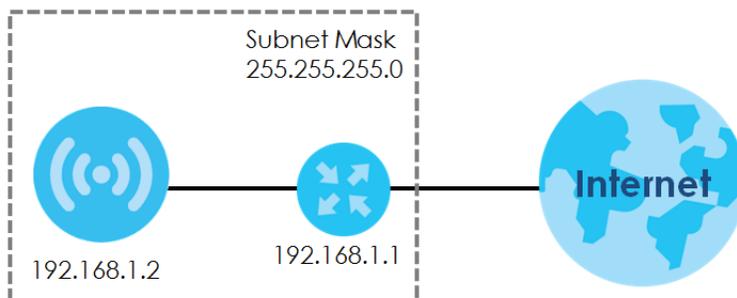
Network

9.1 Overview

This chapter describes how you can configure the management IP address and VLAN settings of your Zyxel Device.

The Internet Protocol (IP) address identifies a device on a network. Every networking device (including computers, servers, routers, printers, etc.) needs an IP address to communicate across the network. These networking devices are also known as hosts.

Figure 51 IP Setup



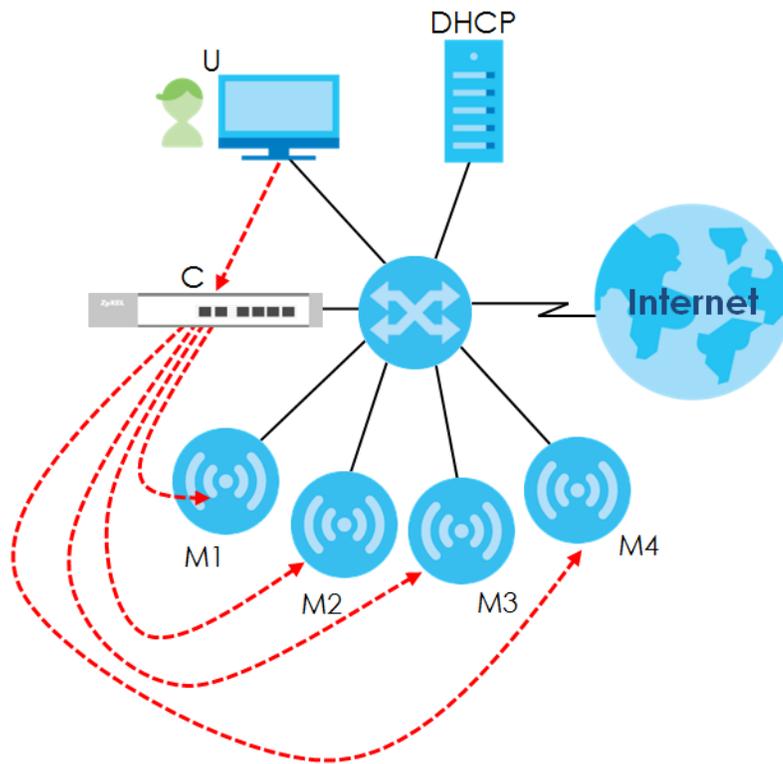
The figure above illustrates one possible setup of your Zyxel Device. The gateway IP address is 192.168.1.1 and the managed IP address of the Zyxel Device is 192.168.1.2 (default), but if the Zyxel Device is assigned an IP address by a DHCP server, the default (192.168.1.2) will not be used. The gateway and the Zyxel Device must belong in the same IP subnet to be able to communicate with each other.

9.1.1 AP Controller Management

This discusses using the Zyxel Device with an AP Controller. AP Controllers, such as the NXC, use Control And Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP) to push firmware and/or configurations to the APs that they manage.

The following figure illustrates a wireless network managed by an AC. You (**U**) configure the AC (**C**), which then automatically updates the configurations of the managed APs (**M1 ~ M4**).

Figure 52 AC managed Network Example



Note: The Zyxel Device can be a standalone device or be managed by an AC.

AC Discovery and Management

The link between AC Discovery-enabled access points proceeds as follows:

- 1 An Zyxel Device with **AC Discovery** enabled joins a wired network (receives a dynamic IP address).
- 2 The Zyxel Device sends out a discovery request, looking for an AC.
- 3 If there is an AC on the network, it receives the discovery request. If the AC, such as NXC, is in **Manual** mode it adds the details of the Zyxel Device to its **Unmanaged Access Points** list, and you decide which available APs to manage. If the AC is in **Always Accept** mode, it automatically adds the Zyxel Device to its **Managed Access Points** list and provides the managed Zyxel Device with default configuration information, as well as securely transmitting the DTLS pre-shared key. The managed Zyxel Device is ready for association with wireless clients.

Managed AP Finds the Controller

A managed Zyxel Device can find the controller in one of the following ways:

- Manually specify the controller's IP address in the Web Configurator's **AC Discovery** screen.
- Get the controller's IP address from a DHCP server with the controller's IP address configured as option 138.
- Get the controller's IP address from a DNS server SRV (Service) record.
- Broadcasting to discover the controller within the broadcast domain.

Note: The AC needs to have a static IP address. If it is a DHCP client, set the DHCP server to reserve an IP address for the AC.

AC management and IP Subnets

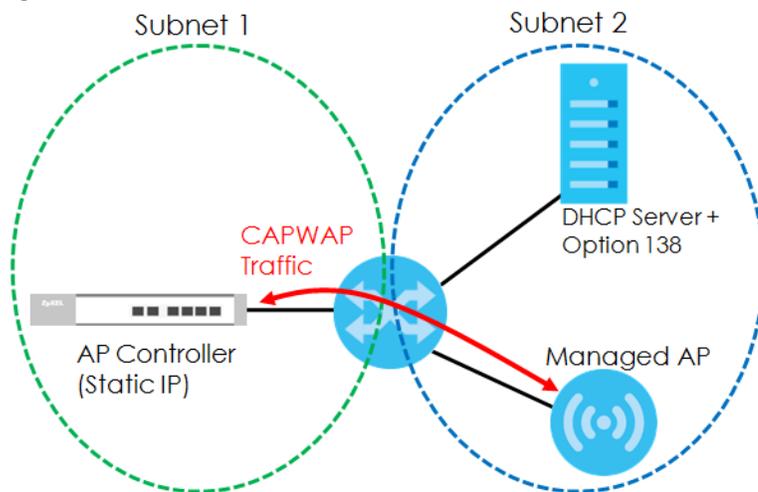
By default, CAPWAP works only between Zyxel Devices with IP addresses in the same subnet.

However, you can configure the Zyxel Device and the AC to use CAPWAP with IP addresses in different subnets by doing the following.

- Activate DHCP. Your network's DHCP server must support option 138 defined in RFC 5415.
- Configure DHCP option 138 with the IP address of the AC on your network.

DHCP Option 138 allows the management request (from the Zyxel Device) to reach the AC in a different subnet, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 53 CAPWAP and DHCP Option 138



Notes on AC management

This section lists some additional features of Zyxel's implementation of the CAPWAP protocol.

- When the AC uses its internal Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) server, managed Zyxel Devices also use the AC's authentication server to authenticate wireless clients.
- If an Zyxel Device's link to the AC is broken, the Zyxel Device continues to use the wireless settings with which it was last provided.

9.1.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **IP Setting** screen ([Section 9.2 on page 98](#)) configures the Zyxel Device's LAN IP address.
- The **VLAN** screen ([Section 9.3 on page 99](#)) configures the Zyxel Device's VLAN settings.
- The **Storm Control** screen ([Section 9.4 on page 102](#)) turns on or off the traffic storm control feature on [the Zyxel Device](#).
- The **AC Discovery** screen ([Section 9.5 on page 103](#)) configures the Zyxel Device's AP Controller (AC) settings.

- The **NCC Discovery** screen (Section 9.6 on page 104) configures the Zyxel Device's Nebula Control Center (NCC) discovery settings.

9.2 IP Setting

Use this screen to configure the IP address for your Zyxel Device. To access this screen, click **Configuration > Network > IP Setting**.

Figure 54 Configuration > Network > IP Setting

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 39 Configuration > Network > IP Setting

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|--|
| IP Address Assignment | |
| Get Automatically | Select this to make the interface a DHCP client and automatically get the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address from a DHCP server. |
| Use Fixed IP Address | Select this if you want to specify the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway manually. |
| IP Address | Enter the IP address for this interface. |
| Subnet Mask | Enter the subnet mask of this interface in dot decimal notation. The subnet mask indicates what part of the IP address is the same for all computers in the network. |
| Gateway | Enter the IP address of the gateway. The Zyxel Device sends packets to the gateway when it does not know how to route the packet to its destination. The gateway should be on the same network as the interface. |

Table 39 Configuration > Network > IP Setting (continued)

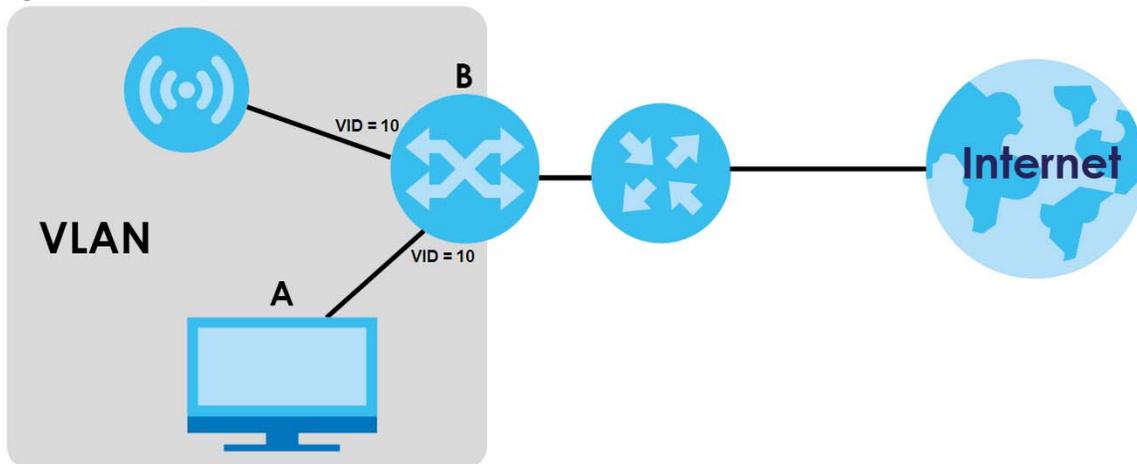
| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| DNS Server IP Address | Enter the IP address of the DNS server. |
| IPv6 Address Assignment | |
| Enable Stateless Address Auto-configuration (SLAAC) | Select this to enable IPv6 stateless auto-configuration on the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device will generate an IPv6 address itself from a prefix obtained from an IPv6 router in the network. |
| Link-Local Address | This displays the IPv6 link-local address and the network prefix that the Zyxel Device generates itself for the LAN interface. |
| IPv6 Address/Prefix Length | Enter the IPv6 address and the prefix length for the LAN interface if you want to use a static IP address. This field is optional. The prefix length indicates what the left-most part of the IP address is the same for all computers in the network, that is, the network address. |
| Gateway | Enter the IPv6 address of the default outgoing gateway using colon (:) hexadecimal notation. |
| Metric | Enter the priority of the gateway (if any) on the LAN interface. The Zyxel Device decides which gateway to use based on this priority. The lower the number, the higher the priority. If two or more gateways have the same priority, the Zyxel Device uses the one that was configured first. Enter zero to set the metric to 1024 for IPv6. |
| DHCPv6 Client | Select this option to set the Zyxel Device to act as a DHCPv6 client. |
| DUID | This field displays the DHCP Unique Identifier (DUID) of the Zyxel Device, which is unique and used for identification purposes when the Zyxel Device is exchanging DHCPv6 messages with others. See Appendix B on page 269 for more information. |
| Request Address | Select this option to get an IPv6 address from the DHCPv6 server. |
| DHCPv6 Request Options | Select this option to determine what additional information to get from the DHCPv6 server. |
| DNS Server | Select this option to obtain the IP address of the DNS server. |
| NTP Server | Select this option to obtain the IP address of the NTP server. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

9.3 VLAN

This section discusses how to configure the Zyxel Device's VLAN settings.

Note: Misconfiguring the management VLAN settings in your Zyxel Device can make it inaccessible. If this happens, you will have to reset the Zyxel Device.

Figure 55 Management VLAN Setup



In the figure above, to access and manage the Zyxel Device from computer **A**, the Zyxel Device and switch **B**'s ports to which computer **A** and the Zyxel Device are connected should be in the same VLAN.

A Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

VLAN also increases network performance by limiting broadcasts to a smaller and more manageable logical broadcast domain. In traditional switched environments, all broadcast packets go to each and every individual port. With VLAN, all broadcasts are confined to a specific broadcast domain.

IEEE 802.1Q Tag

The IEEE 802.1Q standard defines an explicit VLAN tag in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges. A VLAN tag includes the 12-bit VLAN ID and 3-bit user priority. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that devices need to process the frame across the network.

Use this screen to configure the VLAN settings for your Zyxel Device. To access this screen, click **Configuration > Network > VLAN**.

The screen varies depending on whether the Zyxel Device has an extra Ethernet port (except the uplink port).

Figure 56 Configuration > Network > VLAN (for Zyxel Device with multiple Ethernet ports)

Figure 57 Configuration > Network > VLAN (for Zyxel Device with one Ethernet port)

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 40 Configuration > Network > VLAN

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------|---|
| VLAN Settings | |
| Management VLAN ID | Enter a VLAN ID for the Zyxel Device. |
| As Native VLAN | Select this option to treat this VLAN ID as a VLAN created on the Zyxel Device and not one assigned to it from outside the network. |
| LAN Setting | |
| Port Setting | |
| Edit | Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to open a screen where you can modify the entry's settings. In some tables you can just click a table entry and edit it directly in the table. For those types of tables small red triangles display for table entries with changes that you have not yet applied. |
| Activate/Inactivate | To turn on an entry, select it and click Activate . To turn off an entry, select it and click Inactivate . |
| # | This is the index number of the port. |
| Status | This field indicates whether the port is enabled (a yellow bulb) or not (a gray bulb). |
| Port | This field displays the name of the port. |

Table 40 Configuration > Network > VLAN (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| PVID | This field displays the port number of the VLAN ID. |
| VLAN Configuration | |
| Add | Click this to create a new entry. For features where the entry's position in the numbered list is important (features where the Zyxel Device applies the table's entries in order like the SSID for example), you can select an entry and click Add to create a new entry after the selected entry. |
| Edit | Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to open a screen where you can modify the entry's settings. In some tables you can just click a table entry and edit it directly in the table. For those types of tables small red triangles display for table entries with changes that you have not yet applied. |
| Remove | To remove an entry, select it and click Remove . The Zyxel Device confirms you want to remove it before doing so. |
| Activate/ Inactivate | To turn on an entry, select it and click Activate . To turn off an entry, select it and click Inactivate . |
| # | This is the index number of the VLAN ID |
| Status | This field indicates whether the VLAN is enabled (a yellow bulb) or not (a gray bulb). |
| Name | This field displays the name of each VLAN. |
| VID | This field displays the VLAN ID. |
| Member | This field displays the VLAN membership to which the port belongs. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

9.4 Storm Control

Traffic storm control limits the number of broadcast and/or multicast packets the Zyxel Device receives on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast and/or multicast packets is reached, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast and/or multicast packets in your network.

Note: The maximum traffic rate can be changed using the CLI (see the CLI Reference Guide).

To access this screen, click [Configuration > Network > Storm Control](#).

Figure 58 Configuration > Network > Storm Control

The screenshot shows the 'Storm Control' configuration page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with tabs for 'IP Setting', 'VLAN', 'Storm Control' (which is highlighted in blue), 'AC Discovery', and 'NCC Discovery'. Below the navigation bar, the main content area is titled 'Storm Control Setting'. It contains two checkboxes: 'Broadcast Storm Control' and 'Multicast Storm Control', both of which are currently unchecked. At the bottom of the page, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 41 Configuration > Network > Storm Control

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| Broadcast Storm Control | Select the check box to enable broadcast storm control on the Zyxel Device. Enabling this will drop ingress broadcast traffic in the physical Ethernet port if it exceeds the maximum traffic rate. |
| Multicast Storm Control | Select the check box to enable multicast storm control on the Zyxel Device. Enabling this will drop ingress multicast traffic in the physical Ethernet port if it exceeds the maximum traffic rate. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

9.5 AC (AP Controller) Discovery

This section discusses how to configure the Zyxel Device's AC Discovery settings. You can have the Zyxel Device managed by an AC on your network. When you do this, the Zyxel Device can be configured ONLY by the AC. See [Section 9.1.1 on page 95](#) for more information on AC management.

Note: The AC Discovery settings are not available in all Zyxel Devices. See [Section 1.1 on page 13](#) for more information.

If you want to return the Zyxel Device to function in standalone mode, you can do one of the two following options:

- Press the Reset button.
- Check the AC for the Zyxel Device's IP address and use FTP to upload the default configuration file to the Zyxel Device. You can get the configuration file at conf/system-default.conf. You must reboot the Zyxel Device after uploading the configuration file.

To access the Controller Discover screen, click **Configuration > Network > AC Discovery**.

Figure 59 Configuration > Network > AC Discovery

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 42 Configuration > Network > AC Discovery

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Discovery Setting | |
| Auto | Select this option to use DHCP option 138/DNS SRV record/Broadcast to get the AC's IP address. If the Zyxel Device and a Zyxel AC, such as the NXC2500 or NXC5500, are in the same subnet, it will be managed by the controller automatically. |
| Manual | Select this option and enter the IP address of the AC manually. This is necessary when the AP Controller is not in the same subnet and you want it to manage the Zyxel Device. |
| Primary / Secondary Static AC IP | Specify the primary and secondary IP address of the AC to which the Zyxel Device connects. |
| Disable | Select this to manage the Zyxel Device using its own web configurator, neither managing nor being managed by other devices. Please note if an AP Controller is in the same subnet, you will need to click Disable if you do not want the Zyxel Device to be managed. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the information entered in this screen. If you select Auto or Manual , the AC uploads the firmware package for managed AP mode to the Zyxel Device and you cannot log in as the web configurator is disabled; you must manage the Zyxel Device through the AC on your network. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

9.6 NCC Discovery

You can manage the Zyxel Device through the Zyxel Nebula Control Center (NCC). Use this screen to configure the proxy server settings if the Zyxel Device is behind a proxy server.

To access this screen, click **Configuration > Network > NCC Discovery**.

Figure 60 Configuration > Network > NCC Discovery

The screenshot shows the 'NCC Discovery' configuration page. The page title is 'Nebula Control Center Discovery Setting'. It features a navigation bar with tabs for 'IP Setting', 'VLAN', 'AC Discovery', and 'NCC Discovery'. The main content area includes the following settings:

- Enable
- Use Proxy to Access NCC
 - Proxy Server:
 - Proxy Port: (Warning icon, ~65535)
- Authentication
 - User Name: (Warning icon)
 - Password: (Warning icon)

At the bottom of the page, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 43 Configuration > Network > NCC Discovery

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|--|
| Enable | <p>Select this option to turn on NCC discovery on the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device will try to discover the NCC and go into NCC management mode when it is connected to the Internet and has been registered in the NCC.</p> <p>If NCC discovery is disabled, the Zyxel Device will not discover the NCC and remain in standalone operation.</p> |
| Use Proxy to Access NCC | <p>If the Zyxel Device is behind a proxy server, you need to select this option and configure the proxy server settings so that the Zyxel Device can access the NCC through the proxy server.</p> |
| Proxy Server | <p>Enter the IP address of the proxy server.</p> |
| Proxy Port | <p>Enter the service port number used by the proxy server.</p> |
| Authentication | <p>Select this option if the proxy server requires authentication before it grants access to the NCC.</p> |
| User Name | <p>Enter your proxy user name.</p> |
| Password | <p>Enter your proxy password.</p> |
| Apply | <p>Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device.</p> |
| Reset | <p>Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings.</p> |

CHAPTER 10

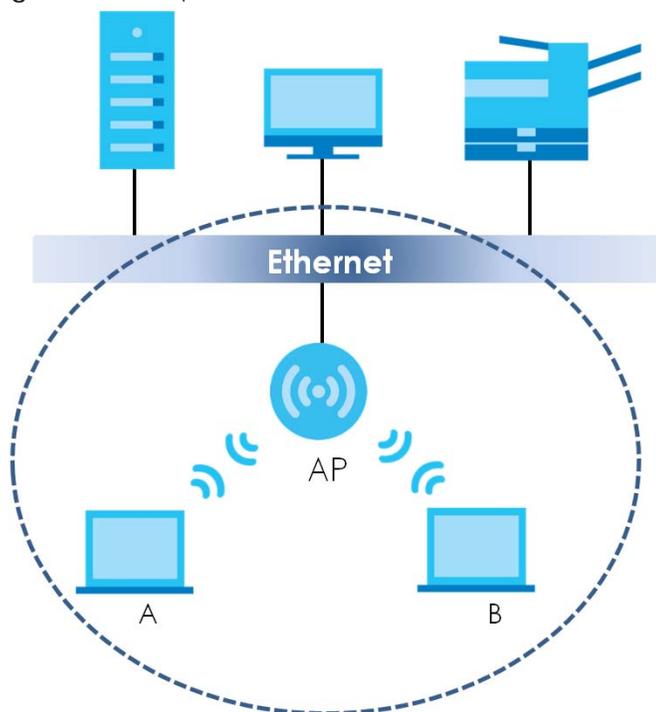
Wireless

10.1 Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure the wireless network settings in your Zyxel Device.

The following figure provides an example of a wireless network.

Figure 61 Example of a Wireless Network



The wireless network is the part in the blue circle. In this wireless network, devices **A** and **B** are called wireless clients. The wireless clients use the access point (AP) to interact with other devices (such as the printer) or with the Internet. Your Zyxel Device is the AP.

10.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **AP Management** screen ([Section 10.2 on page 107](#)) allows you to manage the Zyxel Device's general wireless settings.
- The **Rogue AP** screen ([Section 10.3 on page 110](#)) allows you to assign APs either to the rogue AP list or the friendly AP list.
- The **Load Balancing** screen ([Section 10.4 on page 115](#)) allows you to configure network traffic load balancing between the APs and the Zyxel Device.
- The **DCS** screen ([Section 10.5 on page 117](#)) allows you to configure dynamic radio channel selection.

10.1.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

Station / Wireless Client

A station or wireless client is any wireless-capable device that can connect to an AP using a wireless signal.

Dynamic Channel Selection (DCS)

Dynamic Channel Selection (DCS) is a feature that allows an AP to automatically select the radio channel which it broadcasts. For more information, see [Section 10.6 on page 118](#).

Load Balancing (Wireless)

Wireless load balancing is the process where you limit the number of connections allowed on an wireless access point (AP) or you limit the amount of wireless traffic transmitted and received on it so the AP does not become overloaded.

10.2 AP Management

Use this screen to manage the Zyxel Device's general wireless settings. Click **Configuration > Wireless > AP Management** to access this screen.

Figure 62 Configuration > Wireless > AP Management

WLAN Setting

Radio 1 Setting

Radio 1 Activate

Radio 1 OP Mode: AP Mode MON Mode Root AP Repeater i

Radio 1 Profile(Only for 2.4G):

Max Output Power: dBm (0~30)

MBSSID Settings

[Edit](#)

| # | SSID Profile |
|---|--------------|
| 1 | Wiz_SSID_1 |
| 2 | Wiz_SSID_2 |
| 3 | Wiz_SSID_3 |
| 4 | disable |
| 5 | disable |
| 6 | disable |
| 7 | disable |
| 8 | disable |

Radio 2 Setting

Radio 2 Activate

Radio 2 OP Mode: AP Mode MON Mode Root AP Repeater i

Radio 2 Profile(Only for 5G):

Radio 2 WDS Profile:

Uplink Selection AUTO Manual

Radio 2 Uplink MAC Address: i

Max Output Power: dBm (0~30)

MBSSID Settings

[Edit](#)

| # | SSID Profile |
|---|--------------|
| 1 | Wiz_SSID_1 |
| 2 | Wiz_SSID_2 |
| 3 | Wiz_SSID_3 |
| 4 | disable |
| 5 | disable |
| 6 | disable |
| 7 | disable |
| 8 | disable |

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 44 Configuration > Wireless > AP Management

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| Radio 1 Setting | |
| Radio 1 Activate | Select the check box to enable the Zyxel Device's first (default) radio. |

Table 44 Configuration > Wireless > AP Management (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|---|
| Radio 1 OP Mode | <p>Select the operating mode for radio 1.</p> <p>AP Mode means the radio can receive connections from wireless clients and pass their data traffic through to the Zyxel Device to be managed (or subsequently passed on to an upstream gateway for managing).</p> <p>MON Mode means the radio monitors the broadcast area for other APs, then passes their information on to the Zyxel Device where it can be determined if those APs are friendly or rogue. If a radio is set to this mode it cannot receive connections from wireless clients (see Section 1.2.3 on page 15).</p> <p>Root AP means the radio acts as an AP and also supports the wireless connections with other APs (in repeater mode) to form a WDS (Wireless Distribution System) to extend its wireless network.</p> <p>Repeater means the radio can establish a wireless connection with other APs (in either root AP or repeater mode) to form a WDS.</p> |
| Radio 1 Profile | <p>Select the radio profile the radio uses.</p> <p>Note: You can only apply a 2.4G AP radio profile to radio 1. Otherwise, the first radio will not be working.</p> |
| Radio 1 WDS Profile | <p>This field is available only when the radio is in Root AP or Repeater mode.</p> <p>Select the WDS profile the radio uses to connect to a root AP or repeater.</p> |
| Uplink Selection Mode | <p>This field is available only when the radio is in Repeater mode.</p> <p>Select AUTO to have the Zyxel Device automatically use the settings in the applied WDS profile to connect to a root AP or repeater.</p> <p>Select Manual to have the Zyxel Device connect to the root AP or repeater with the MAC address specified in the Radio 1 Uplink MAC Address field.</p> |
| Max Output Power | <p>Enter the maximum output power (between 0 to 30 dBm) of the Zyxel Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the Zyxel Device to reduce interference with other APs.</p> <p>Note: Reducing the output power also reduces the Zyxel Device's effective broadcast radius.</p> |
| MBSSID Settings | |
| Edit | <p>Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to open a screen where you can modify the entry's settings. In some tables you can just click a table entry and edit it directly in the table. For those types of tables small red triangles display for table entries with changes that you have not yet applied.</p> |
| # | <p>This field shows the index number of the SSID</p> |
| SSID Profile | <p>This field displays the SSID profile that is associated with the radio profile.</p> |
| Radio 2 Setting | |
| Radio 2 Activate | <p>This displays if the Zyxel Device has a second radio.</p> <p>Select the check box to enable the Zyxel Device's second radio.</p> |

Table 44 Configuration > Wireless > AP Management (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|--|
| Radio 2 OP Mode | <p>This displays if the Zyxel Device has a second radio. Select the operating mode for radio 2.</p> <p>AP Mode means the radio can receive connections from wireless clients and pass their data traffic through to the Zyxel Device to be managed (or subsequently passed on to an upstream gateway for managing).</p> <p>MON Mode means the radio monitors the broadcast area for other APs, then passes their information on to the Zyxel Device where it can be determined if those APs are friendly or rogue. If a radio is set to this mode it cannot receive connections from wireless clients (see Section 1.2.3 on page 15).</p> <p>Root AP means the radio acts as an AP and also supports the wireless connections with other APs (in repeater mode) to form a WDS to extend its wireless network.</p> <p>Repeater means the radio can establish a wireless connection with other APs (in either root AP or repeater mode) to form a WDS.</p> |
| Radio 2 Profile | <p>This displays if the Zyxel Device has a second radio. Select the radio profile the radio uses.</p> <p>Note: You can only apply a 5G AP radio profile to radio 2. Otherwise, the second radio will not be working.</p> |
| Radio 2 WDS Profile | <p>This field is available only when the radio is in Root AP or Repeater mode.</p> <p>Select the WDS profile the radio uses to connect to a root AP or repeater.</p> |
| Uplink Selection Mode | <p>This field is available only when the radio is in Repeater mode.</p> <p>Select AUTO to have the Zyxel Device automatically use the settings in the applied WDS profile to connect to a root AP or repeater.</p> <p>Select Manual to have the Zyxel Device connect to the root AP or repeater with the MAC address specified in the Radio 2 Uplink MAC Address field.</p> |
| Max Output Power | <p>Enter the maximum output power (between 0 to 30 dBm) of the Zyxel Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the Zyxel Device to reduce interference with other APs.</p> <p>Note: Reducing the output power also reduces the Zyxel Device's effective broadcast radius.</p> |
| MBSSID Settings | |
| Edit | <p>Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to open a screen where you can modify the entry's settings. In some tables you can just click a table entry and edit it directly in the table. For those types of tables small red triangles display for table entries with changes that you have not yet applied.</p> |
| # | This field shows the index number of the SSID |
| SSID Profile | This field shows the SSID profile that is associated with the radio profile. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

10.3 Rogue AP

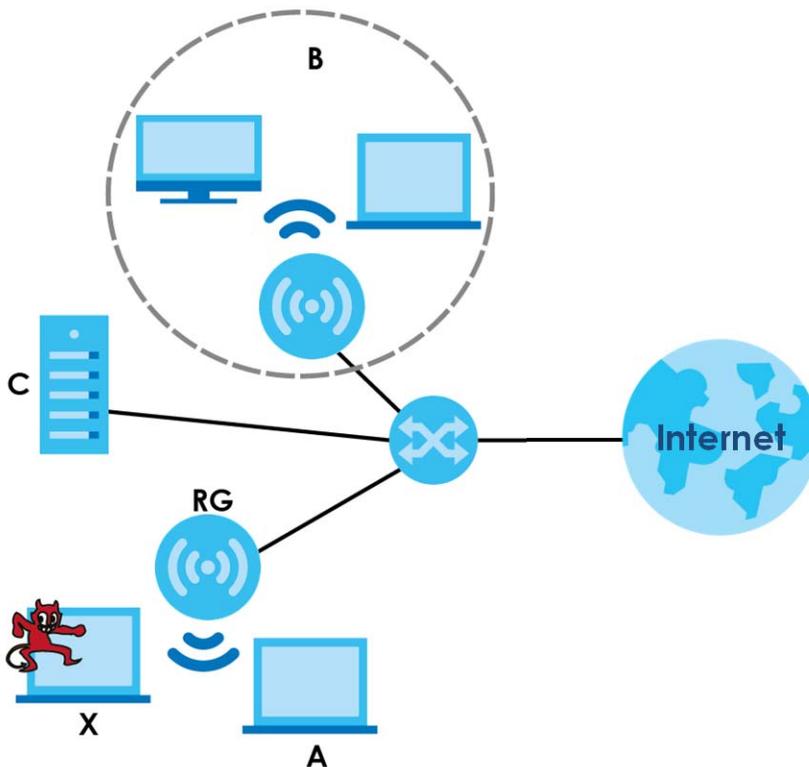
Use this screen to enable **Rogue AP Detection** and import/export a rogue or friendly AP list in a txt file. Click **Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP** to access this screen.

Rogue APs

A rogue AP is a wireless access point operating in a network's coverage area that is not under the control of the network administrator, and which can potentially open up holes in a network's security.

In the following example, a corporate network's security is compromised by a rogue AP (**RG**) set up by an employee at his workstation in order to allow him to connect his notebook computer wirelessly (**A**). The company's legitimate wireless network (the dashed ellipse **B**) is well-secured, but the rogue AP uses inferior security that is easily broken by an attacker (**X**) running readily available encryption-cracking software. In this example, the attacker now has access to the company network, including sensitive data stored on the file server (**C**).

Figure 63 Rogue AP Example



Friendly APs

If you have more than one AP in your wireless network, you should also configure a list of "friendly" APs. Friendly APs are wireless access points that you know are not a threat. It is recommended that you export (save) your list of friendly APs often, especially if you have a network with a large number of access points. Exported lists show MAC addresses in txt file format separated by line breaks.

Rogue AP Detection

This feature allows the Zyxel Device to monitor the WiFi signals for other wireless APs (see also [Section 1.2.3 on page 15](#)). Detected APs will appear in the **Monitor > Wireless > Detected Device** screen, where the Zyxel Device will label APs with the criteria you select in **Suspected Rogue AP Classification Rule** as a suspected rogue. The APs which you mark as either rogue or friendly APs in the **Monitor > Wireless >**

Detected Device screen will appear in the **Wireless > Rogue AP** screen. See [Section 1.4 on page 19](#) to know which models support **Rogue AP Detection**.

Note: Enabling **Rogue AP Detection** might affect the performance of wireless clients associated with the Zyxel Device.

Figure 64 Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP (for Zyxel Devices that support Monitor mode)

Rogue/Friendly AP List

Add Edit Remove

| # | Role | MAC Address | Description |
|---|----------|-------------------|--------------|
| 1 | rogue-ap | 00:A0:C5:01:23:45 | rogueexample |

Page 1 of 1 Show 50 items Displaying 1 - 1 of 1

Rogue AP List Importing/Exporting

File Path:

Friendly AP List Importing/Exporting

File Path:

Figure 65 Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP (for Zyxel Devices that support Rogue AP Detection)

Rogue/Friendly AP List

Rogue AP Detection Setting

Enable Rogue AP Detection

Suspected Rogue AP Classification Rule

Weak Security (Open, WEP, WPA-PSK)

Hidden SSID

SSID Keyword

+ Add Edit Remove

| # | SSID Keyword |
|---|--------------|
| 1 | test |

Rogue/Friendly AP List

+ Add Edit Remove

| # | Role | MAC Address | Description |
|---|-------------|-------------------|-------------|
| 1 | friendly-ap | 60:31:97:7D:5B:51 | |
| 2 | rogue-ap | 00:A0:C5:01:23:45 | example |

Page 1 of 1 Show 50 items Displaying 1 - 2 of 2

Rogue AP List Importing/Exporting

File Path: Select a file path for Rogue AP List

Friendly AP List Importing/Exporting

File Path: Select a file path for Friendly AP List

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 45 Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Rogue AP Detection Setting | |
| Enable Rogue AP Detection | Select this check box to detect Rogue APs in the network. |
| Suspected Rogue AP Classification Rule | Select the check boxes (Weak Security (Open, WEP, WPA-PSK) , Hidden SSID , SSID Keyword) of the characteristics an AP should have for the Zyxel Device to mark it as a Rogue AP. |
| Add | Click this to add an SSID Keyword. |
| Edit | Select an SSID Keyword and click this button to modify it. |
| Remove | Select an existing SSID keyword and click this button to delete it. |
| # | This is the SSID Keyword's index number in this list. |
| SSID Keyword | This field displays the SSID Keyword. |
| Rogue/Friendly AP List | |
| Add | Click this button to add an AP to the list and assign it either friendly or rogue status. |
| Edit | Select an AP in the list to edit and reassign its status. |
| Remove | Select an AP in the list to remove. |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with any interface. |

Table 45 Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| Role | This field indicates whether the selected AP is a rogue-ap or a friendly-ap . To change the AP's role, click the Edit button. |
| MAC Address | This field indicates the AP's radio MAC address. |
| Description | This field displays the AP's description. You can modify this by clicking the Edit button. |
| Rogue/Friendly AP List Importing/Exporting | These controls allow you to export the current list of rogue and friendly APs or import existing lists. |
| File Path / Browse / Importing | Enter the file name and path of the list you want to import or click the Browse button to locate it. Once the File Path field has been populated, click Importing to bring the list into the Zyxel Device. You need to wait a while for the importing process to finish. |
| Exporting | Click this button to export the current list of either rogue APs or friendly APs. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

10.3.1 Add/Edit Rogue/Friendly List

Click **Add** or select an AP and click the **Edit** button in the **Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP** table to display this screen.

Figure 66 Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP > Add/Edit Rogue/Friendly AP List

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 46 Configuration > Wireless > Rogue AP > Add/Edit Rogue/Friendly AP List

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|---|
| MAC | Enter the MAC address of the AP you want to add to the list. A MAC address is a unique hardware identifier in the following hexadecimal format: xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx where xx is a hexadecimal number separated by colons. |
| Description | Enter up to 60 characters for the AP's description. Spaces and underscores are allowed. |
| Role | Select either Rogue AP or Friendly AP for the AP's role. |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to close the window with changes unsaved. |

10.4 Load Balancing

Use this screen to configure wireless network traffic load balancing between the APs on your network (see [Load Balancing on page 119](#)). Click **Configuration > Wireless > Load Balancing** to access this screen.

Figure 67 Configuration > Wireless > Load Balancing

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 47 Configuration > Wireless > Load Balancing

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|--|
| Enable Load Balancing | Select this to enable load balancing on the Zyxel Device. Use this section to configure wireless network traffic load balancing between the managed APs in this group. |
| Mode | Select a mode by which load balancing is carried out. Select By Station Number to balance network traffic based on the number of specified stations connected to the Zyxel Device. Select By Traffic Level to balance network traffic based on the volume generated by the stations connected to the Zyxel Device. Select By Smart Classroom to balance network traffic based on the number of specified stations connected to the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device ignores association request and authentication request packets from any new station when the maximum number of stations is reached. If you select By Station Number or By Traffic Level , once the threshold is crossed (either the maximum station numbers or with network traffic), the Zyxel Device delays association request and authentication request packets from any new station that attempts to make a connection. This allows the station to automatically attempt to connect to another, less burdened AP if one is available. |
| Max Station Number | Enter the threshold number of stations at which the Zyxel Device begins load balancing its connections. |
| Traffic Level | Select the threshold traffic level at which the Zyxel Device begins load balancing its connections (Low , Medium , High). The maximum bandwidth allowed for each level is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Low - 11 Mbps, • Medium - 23 Mbps • High - 35M bps |

Table 47 Configuration > Wireless > Load Balancing (continued)

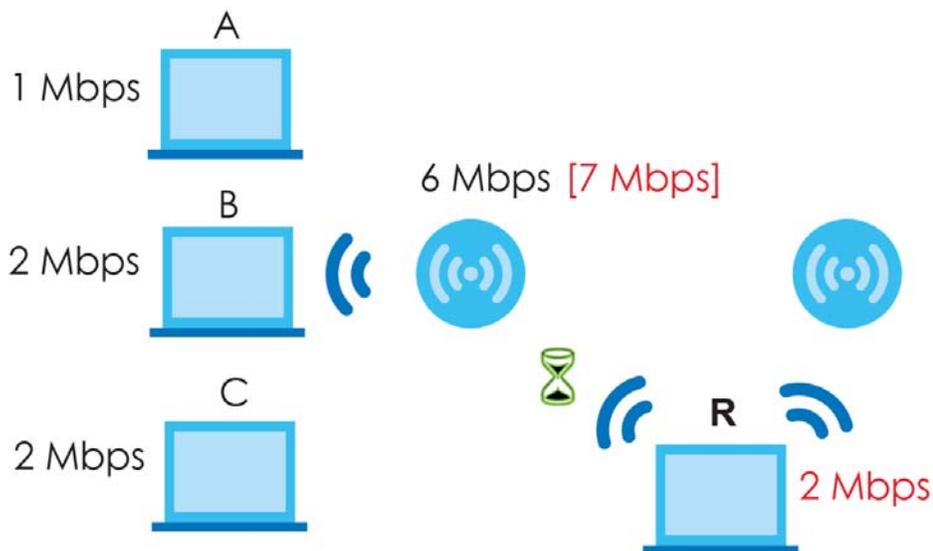
| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Disassociate station when overloaded | <p>This function is enabled by default and the disassociation priority is always Signal Strength when you set Mode to By Smart Classroom.</p> <p>Select this option to disassociate wireless clients connected to the AP when it becomes overloaded. If you do not enable this option, then the AP simply delays the connection until it can afford the bandwidth it requires, or it transfers the connection to another AP within its broadcast radius.</p> <p>The disassociation priority is determined automatically by the Zyxel Device and is as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Idle Timeout - Devices that have been idle the longest will be kicked first. If none of the connected devices are idle, then the priority shifts to Signal Strength. • Signal Strength - Devices with the weakest signal strength will be kicked first. <p>Note: If you enable this function, you should ensure that there are multiple APs within the broadcast radius that can accept any rejected or kicked wireless clients; otherwise, a wireless client attempting to connect to an overloaded AP will be disassociated permanently and never be allowed to connect.</p> |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

10.4.1 Disassociating and Delaying Connections

When your AP becomes overloaded, there are two basic responses it can take. The first one is to “delay” a client connection. This means that the AP withholds the connection until the data transfer throughput is lowered or the client connection is picked up by another AP. If the client is picked up by another AP then the original AP cannot resume the connection.

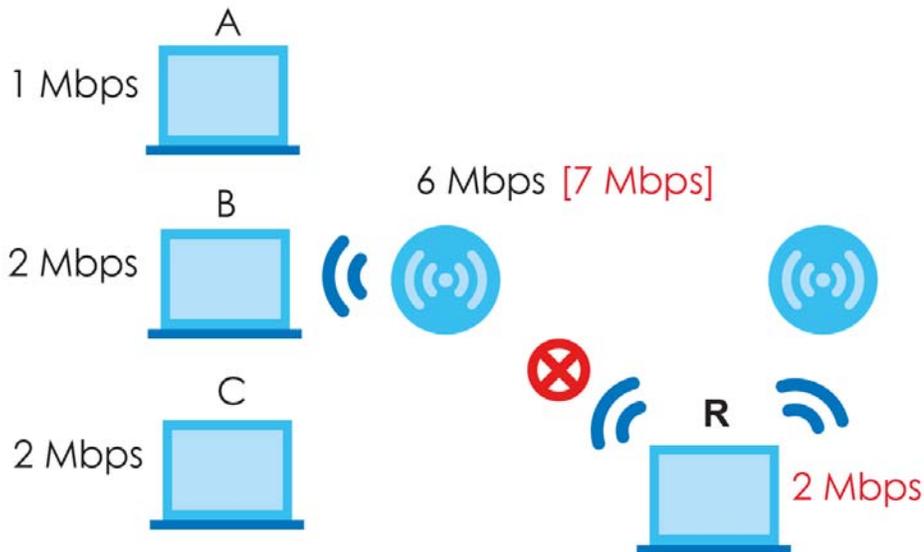
For example, here the AP has a balanced bandwidth allotment of 6 Mbps. If laptop **R** connects and it pushes the AP over its allotment, say to 7 Mbps, then the AP delays the red laptop’s connection until it can afford the bandwidth or the laptop is picked up by a different AP with bandwidth to spare.

Figure 68 Delaying a Connection



The second response your AP can take is to disassociate with clients that are pushing it over its balanced bandwidth allotment.

Figure 69 Disassociating with a client

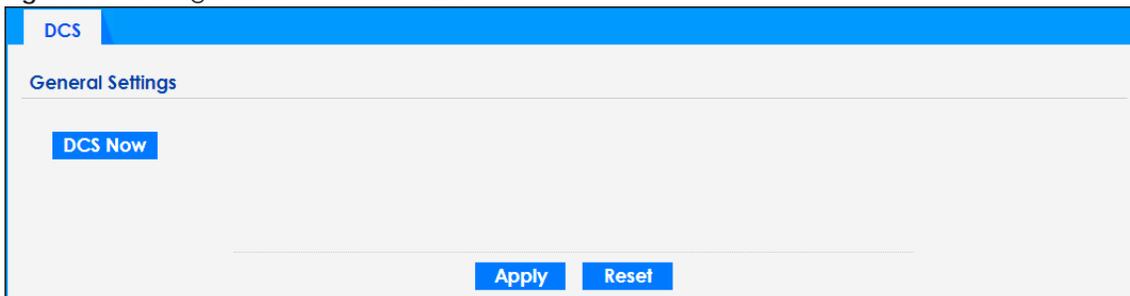


Connections are cut based on either **idle timeout** or **signal strength**. The Zyxel Device first looks to see which devices have been idle the longest, then starts kicking them in order of highest idle time. If no connections are idle, the next criteria the Zyxel Device analyzes is signal strength. Devices with the weakest signal strength are kicked first.

10.5 DCS

Use this screen to configure dynamic radio channel selection (see [Dynamic Channel Selection \(DCS\)](#) on page 107). Click **Configuration > Wireless > DCS** to access this screen.

Figure 70 Configuration > Wireless > DCS



Each field is described in the following table.

Table 48 Configuration > Wireless > DCS

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|---|
| Select DCS Now | Click this to have the Zyxel Device scan for and select an available channel immediately. |

Table 48 Configuration > Wireless > DCS (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|---|
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

10.6 Technical Reference

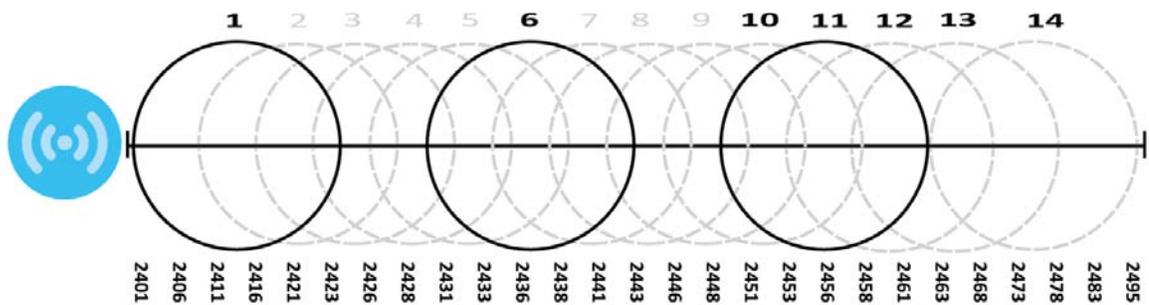
The following section contains additional technical information about the features described in this chapter.

Dynamic Channel Selection

When numerous APs broadcast within a given area, they introduce the possibility of heightened radio interference, especially if some or all of them are broadcasting on the same radio channel. If the interference becomes too great, then the network administrator must open his AP configuration options and manually change the channel to one that no other AP is using (or at least a channel that has a lower level of interference) in order to give the connected stations a minimum degree of interference. Dynamic channel selection frees the network administrator from this task by letting the AP do it automatically. The AP can scan the area around it looking for the channel with the least amount of interference.

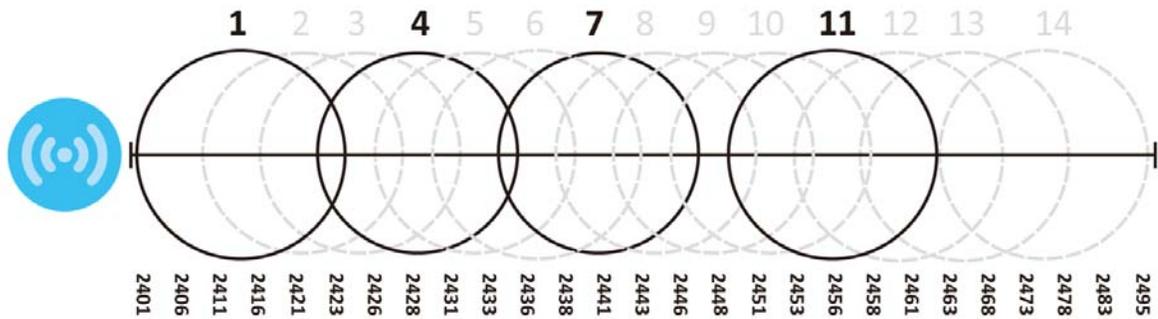
In the 2.4 GHz spectrum, each channel from 1 to 13 is broken up into discrete 22 MHz segments that are spaced 5 MHz apart. Channel 1 is centered on 2.412 GHz while channel 13 is centered on 2.472 GHz.

Figure 71 An Example Three-Channel Deployment



Three channels are situated in such a way as to create almost no interference with one another if used exclusively: 1, 6 and 11. When an AP broadcasts on any of these three channels, it should not interfere with neighboring APs as long as they are also limited to same trio.

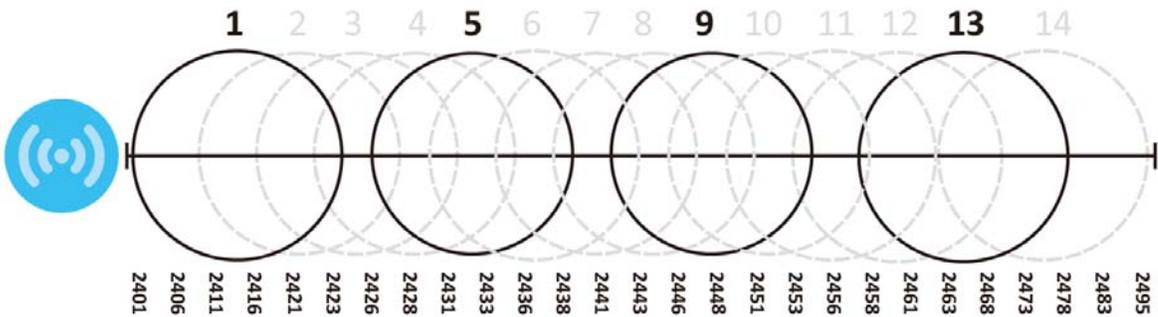
Figure 72 An Example Four-Channel Deployment



However, some regions require the use of other channels and often use a safety scheme with the following four channels: 1, 4, 7 and 11. While they are situated sufficiently close to both each other and the three so-called “safe” channels (1, 6 and 11) that interference becomes inevitable, the severity of it is dependent upon other factors: proximity to the affected AP, signal strength, activity, and so on.

Finally, there is an alternative four channel scheme for ETSI, consisting of channels 1, 5, 9, 13. This offers significantly less overlap than the other one.

Figure 73 An Alternative Four-Channel Deployment



Load Balancing

Because there is a hard upper limit on an AP's wireless bandwidth, load balancing can be crucial in areas crowded with wireless users. Rather than let every user connect and subsequently dilute the available bandwidth to the point where each connecting device receives a meager trickle, the load balanced AP instead limits the incoming connections as a means to maintain bandwidth integrity.

There are three kinds of wireless load balancing available on the Zyxel Device:

Load balancing by station number limits the number of devices allowed to connect to your AP. If you know exactly how many stations you want to let connect, choose this option.

For example, if your company's graphic design team has their own AP and they have 10 computers, you can load balance for 10. Later, if someone from the sales department visits the graphic design team's offices for a meeting and he tries to access the network, his computer's connection is delayed, giving it the opportunity to connect to a different, neighboring AP. If he still connects to the AP regardless of the delay, then the AP may boot other people who are already connected in order to associate with the new connection.

Load balancing by smart classroom also limits the number of devices allowed to connect to your AP. But any new connections will be just rejected when the AP is overloaded.

Load balancing by traffic level limits the number of connections to the AP based on maximum bandwidth available. If you are uncertain as to the exact number of wireless connections you will have then choose this option. By setting a maximum bandwidth cap, you allow any number of devices to connect as long as their total bandwidth usage does not exceed the configured bandwidth cap associated with this setting. Once the cap is hit, any new connections are rejected or delayed provided that there are other APs in range.

Imagine a coffee shop in a crowded business district that offers free wireless connectivity to its customers. The coffee shop owner can't possibly know how many connections his AP will have at any given moment. As such, he decides to put a limit on the bandwidth that is available to his customers but not on the actual number of connections he allows. This means anyone can connect to his wireless network as long as the AP has the bandwidth to spare. If too many people connect and the AP hits its bandwidth cap then all new connections must basically wait for their turn or get shunted to the nearest identical AP.

CHAPTER 11

Bluetooth

11.1 Overview

Use this screen to configure the iBeacon advertising settings for the Zyxel Device that supports Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE). Bluetooth Low Energy, which is also known as Bluetooth Smart, transmits less data over a shorter distance but consumes less power than classic Bluetooth.

On the WAC5302D-S, you need to attach a supported BLE USB dongle to its USB port to have the AP act as a beacon to broadcast packets. Contact Zyxel customer support if you are not sure whether your BLE USB dongle is compatible with the Zyxel Device.

11.1.1 What You Need To Know

iBeacon is Apple's communication protocol on top of Bluetooth Low Energy wireless technology. Beacons (Bluetooth radio transmitters) or BLE enabled devices broadcast packets to every device around it to announce their presence. Advertising packets contain their iBeacon ID, which consists of the Universally Unique Identifier (UUID), major number, and minor number. These packets also contain a TX (transmit) power measured at a reference point, which is used to approximate a device's distance from the beacon. The UUID can be used to identify a service, a device, a manufacturer or an owner. The 2-byte major number is to identify and distinguish a group, and the 2-byte minor number is to identify and distinguish an individual.

For example, a company can set all its beacons to share the same UUID. The beacons in a particular branch uses the same major number, and each beacon in a branch can have its own minor number.

| | COMPANY A | | |
|-------|--------------------------------------|----------|----------|
| | BRANCH X | | BRANCH Y |
| | BEACON 1 | BEACON 2 | BEACON 3 |
| UUID | EBAECFAF-DFE0-4039-BE5A-F030EED4303C | | |
| Major | 10 | 10 | 20 |
| Minor | 1 | 2 | 1 |

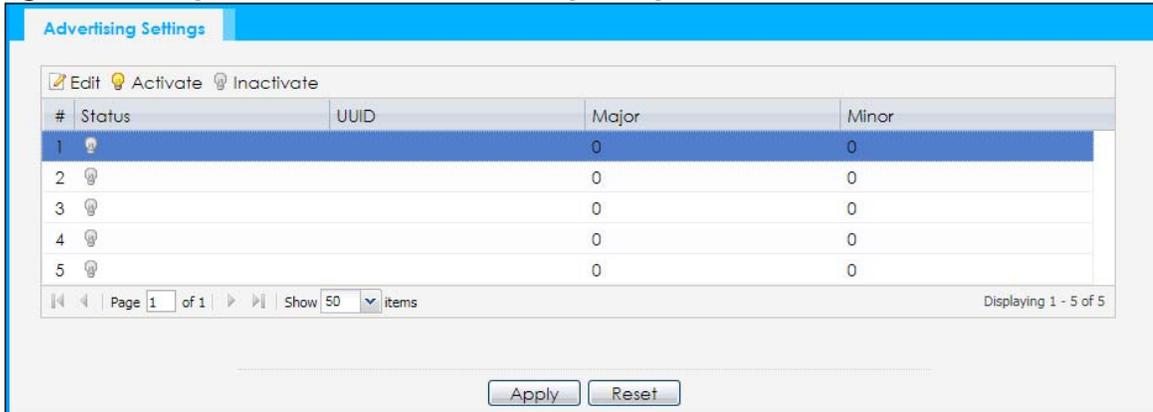
Developers can create apps that respond to the iBeacon ID that your Zyxel Device broadcasts. An app that is associated with the Zyxel Device's iBeacon ID can measure the proximity of a customer to a beacon. This app can then push messages or trigger prompts and actions based on this information. This allows you to send highly contextual and highly localized advertisements to customers.

11.2 Bluetooth Advertising Settings

The Zyxel Device communicates with another BLE enabled device for advertisements. Use this screen to configure up to five beacon IDs to be included in the advertising packet.

To access this screen, click **Configuration > Bluetooth > Advertising Settings**.

Figure 74 Configuration > Bluetooth > Advertising Settings



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 49 Configuration > Bluetooth > Advertising Settings

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|--|
| Edit | Click this to edit the selected entry. |
| Activate | To turn on an entry, select it and click Activate . |
| Inactivate | To turn off an entry, select it and click Inactivate . |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific entry. |
| Status | This field shows whether or not the entry is activated. A yellow bulb signifies that this rule is active. A gray bulb signifies that this rule is not active. |
| UUID | This field indicates the UUID to be included in the Bluetooth advertising packets. |
| Major | This field indicates the major number to be included in the Bluetooth advertising packets. |
| Minor | This field indicates the minor number to be included in the Bluetooth advertising packets. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

11.2.1 Edit Advertising Settings

Select an entry in the **Configuration > Bluetooth > Advertising Settings** screen and click the **Edit** icon to open the **Edit Advertising** screen. Use this screen to configure the beacon ID in the Bluetooth advertising packets.

Figure 75 Configuration > Bluetooth > Advertising Settings > Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Configuration > Bluetooth > Advertising Settings > Edit

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|--|
| Activate | Select this option to enable the advertising settings. |
| UUID | To specify a UUID for the Zyxel Device's beacon ID, enter 32 hexadecimal digits in the range of "A-F", "a-f" and "0-9", split into five groups separated by hyphens (-). The UUID format is as follows: xxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx (8-4-4-4-12) |
| Generate new UUID | Click this button to have the Zyxel Device generate a new UUID automatically. |
| Major | Enter an integer from 0 to 65535 as the major value to identify the group to which the beacon belongs. |
| Minor | Enter an integer from 0 to 65535 as the minor value to identify the individual beacon. |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes. |

CHAPTER 12

User

12.1 Overview

This chapter describes how to set up user accounts and user settings for the Zyxel Device.

12.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **User** screen (see [Section 12.2 on page 125](#)) provides a summary of all user accounts.
- The **Setting** screen (see [Section 12.3 on page 127](#)) controls default settings, login settings, lockout settings, and other user settings for the Zyxel Device.

12.1.2 What You Need To Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

User Account

A user account defines the privileges of a user logged into the Zyxel Device. User accounts are used in controlling access to configuration and services in the Zyxel Device.

User Types

These are the types of user accounts the Zyxel Device uses.

Table 51 Types of User Accounts

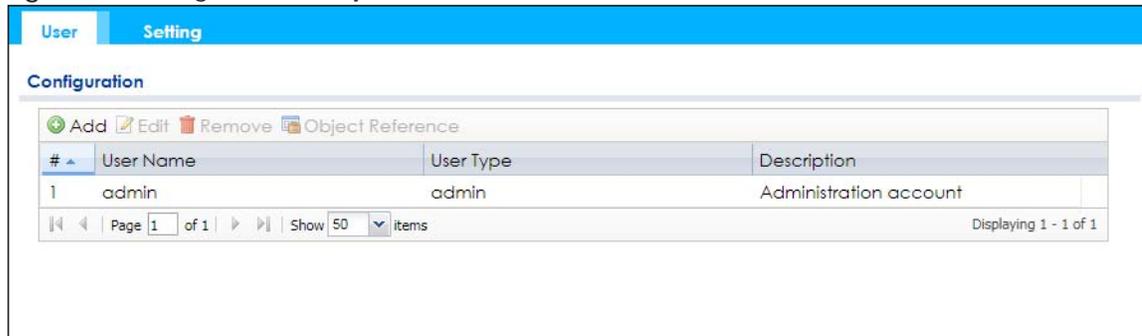
| TYPE | ABILITIES | LOGIN METHOD(S) |
|---------------|--|-----------------------|
| Admin Users | | |
| admin | Change Zyxel Device configuration (web, CLI) | WWW, TELNET, SSH, FTP |
| limited-admin | Look at Zyxel Device configuration (web, CLI) Perform basic diagnostics (CLI) | WWW, TELNET, SSH |
| Access Users | | |
| user | Used for the embedded RADIUS server and SNMPv3 user access Browse user-mode commands (CLI) | |

Note: The default **admin** account is always authenticated locally, regardless of the authentication method setting.

12.2 User Summary

The **User** screen provides a summary of all user accounts. To access this screen click **Configuration > Object > User**.

Figure 76 Configuration > Object > User



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 52 Configuration > Object > User

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|---|
| Add | Click this to create a new entry. |
| Edit | Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to open a screen where you can modify the entry's settings. |
| Remove | To remove an entry, select it and click Remove . The Zyxel Device confirms you want to remove it before doing so. |
| Object Reference | Select an entry and click Object Reference to open a screen that shows which settings use the entry. |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific user. |
| User Name | This field displays the user name of each user. |
| User Type | This field displays type of user this account was configured as. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> admin - this user can look at and change the configuration of the Zyxel Device limited-admin - this user can look at the configuration of the Zyxel Device but not to change it user - this user has access to the Zyxel Device's services but cannot look at the configuration |
| Description | This field displays the description for each user. |

12.2.1 Add/Edit User

The **User Add/Edit** screen allows you to create a new user account or edit an existing one.

12.2.1.1 Rules for User Names

Enter a user name from 1 to 31 characters.

The user name can only contain the following characters:

- Alphanumeric A-z 0-9 (there is no unicode support)
- _ [underscores]

- - [dashes]

The first character must be alphabetical (A-Z a-z), an underscore (_), or a dash (-). Other limitations on user names are:

- User names are case-sensitive. If you enter a user 'bob' but use 'BOB' when connecting via CIFS or FTP, it will use the account settings used for 'BOB' not 'bob'.
- User names have to be different than user group names.
- Here are the reserved user names:
 - adm
 - admin
 - any
 - bin
 - daemon
 - debug
 - devicehaecived
 - ftp
 - games
 - halt
 - ldap-users
 - lp
 - mail
 - news
 - nobody
 - operator
 - radius-users
 - root
 - shutdown
 - sshd
 - sync
 - uucp
 - zyxel

To access this screen, go to the **User** screen, and click **Add** or **Edit**.

Figure 77 Configuration > Object > User > Add/Edit A User

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 53 Configuration > User > User > Add/Edit A User

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|---|
| User Name | Type the user name for this user account. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive. User names have to be different than user group names, and some words are reserved. |
| User Type | Select what type of user this is. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • admin - this user can look at and change the configuration of the Zyxel Device • limited-admin - this user can look at the configuration of the Zyxel Device but not to change it • user - this is used for embedded RADIUS server and SNMPv3 user access |
| Password | Enter the password of this user account. It can consist of 4 - 63 alphanumeric characters. |
| Retype | Re-enter the password to make sure you have entered it correctly. |
| Description | Enter the description of each user, if any. You can use up to 60 printable ASCII characters. Default descriptions are provided. |

Table 53 Configuration > User > User > Add/Edit A User (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Authentication Timeout Settings | This field is not available if the user type is user . If you want to set authentication timeout to a value other than the default settings, select Use Manual Settings then fill your preferred values in the fields that follow. |
| Lease Time | This field is not available if the user type is user . Enter the number of minutes this user has to renew the current session before the user is logged out. You can specify 1 to 1440 minutes. You can enter 0 to make the number of minutes unlimited. Admin users renew the session every time the main screen refreshes in the Web Configurator. |
| Reauthentication Time | This field is not available if the user type is user . Type the number of minutes this user can be logged into the Zyxel Device in one session before the user has to log in again. You can specify 1 to 1440 minutes. You can enter 0 to make the number of minutes unlimited. Unlike Lease Time , the user has no opportunity to renew the session without logging out. |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes. |

12.3 Setting

This screen controls default settings, login settings, lockout settings, and other user settings for the Zyxel Device.

To access this screen, login to the Web Configurator, and click **Configuration > Object > User > Setting**.

Figure 78 Configuration > Object > User > Setting

User Default Setting

Default Authentication Timeout Settings

[Edit](#)

| # | User Type | Lease Time | Reauthentication Time |
|---|---------------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | admin | 1440 | 1440 |
| 2 | limited-admin | 1440 | 1440 |
| 3 | user | - | - |

Page 1 of 1 | Show 50 items | Displaying 1 - 3 of 3

User Logon Settings

Limit the number of simultaneous logons for administration account

Maximum number per administration account: (1-64)

User Lockout Settings

Enable logon retry limit

Maximum retry count: (1-99)

Lockout period: (1-65535 minutes)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 54 Configuration > Object > User > Setting

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| User Default Setting | |
| Default Authentication Timeout Settings | These authentication timeout settings are used by default when you create a new user account. They also control the settings for any existing user accounts that are set to use the default settings. You can still manually configure any user account's authentication timeout settings. |
| Edit | Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to open a screen where you can modify the entry's settings. |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific entry. |
| User Type | These are the kinds of user account the Zyxel Device supports. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> admin - this user can look at and change the configuration of the Zyxel Device limited-admin - this user can look at the configuration of the Zyxel Device but not to change it user - this is used for embedded RADIUS server and SNMPv3 user access |
| Lease Time | This is the default lease time in minutes for each type of user account. It defines the number of minutes the user has to renew the current session before the user is logged out. Admin users renew the session every time the main screen refreshes in the Web Configurator. |
| Reauthentication Time | This is the default reauthentication time in minutes for each type of user account. It defines the number of minutes the user can be logged into the Zyxel Device in one session before having to log in again. Unlike Lease Time , the user has no opportunity to renew the session without logging out. |
| User Logon Settings | |

Table 54 Configuration > Object > User > Setting (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Limit the number of simultaneous logons for administration account | Select this check box if you want to set a limit on the number of simultaneous logins by admin users. If you do not select this, admin users can login as many times as they want at the same time using the same or different IP addresses. |
| Maximum number per administration account | This field is effective when Limit ... for administration account is checked. Type the maximum number of simultaneous logins by each admin user. |
| User Lockout Settings | |
| Enable logon retry limit | Select this check box to set a limit on the number of times each user can login unsuccessfully (for example, wrong password) before the IP address is locked out for a specified amount of time. |
| Maximum retry count | This field is effective when Enable logon retry limit is checked. Type the maximum number of times each user can login unsuccessfully before the IP address is locked out for the specified lockout period . The number must be between 1 and 99. |
| Lockout period | This field is effective when Enable logon retry limit is checked. Type the number of minutes the user must wait to try to login again, if logon retry limit is enabled and the maximum retry count is reached. This number must be between 1 and 65,535 (about 45.5 days). |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

12.3.1 Edit User Authentication Timeout Settings

This screen allows you to set the default authentication timeout settings for the selected type of user account. These default authentication timeout settings also control the settings for any existing user accounts that are set to use the default settings. You can still manually configure any user account's authentication timeout settings.

To access this screen, go to the **Configuration > Object > User > Setting** screen, select one of the **Default Authentication Timeout Settings** entry and click the **Edit** icon.

Figure 79 User > Setting > Edit User Authentication Timeout Settings

Edit User Authentication Timeout Settings

User Type: admin

Lease Time: 1440 (0-1440 minutes, 0 is unlimited)

Reauthentication Time: 1440 (0-1440 minutes, 0 is unlimited)

OK Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 55 User > Setting > Edit User Authentication Timeout Settings

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|---|
| User Type | <p>This read-only field identifies the type of user account for which you are configuring the default settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • admin - this user can look at and change the configuration of the Zyxel Device. • limited-admin - this user can look at the configuration of the Zyxel Device but not to change it. |
| Lease Time | <p>Enter the number of minutes this type of user account has to renew the current session before the user is logged out. You can specify 1 to 1440 minutes. You can enter 0 to make the number of minutes unlimited.</p> <p>Admin users renew the session every time the main screen refreshes in the Web Configurator. Access users can renew the session by clicking the Renew button on their screen. If you allow access users to renew time automatically, the users can select this check box on their screen as well. In this case, the session is automatically renewed before the lease time expires.</p> |
| Reauthentication Time | <p>Type the number of minutes this type of user account can be logged into the Zyxel Device in one session before the user has to log in again. You can specify 1 to 1440 minutes. You can enter 0 to make the number of minutes unlimited. Unlike Lease Time, the user has no opportunity to renew the session without logging out.</p> |
| OK | <p>Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device.</p> |
| Cancel | <p>Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes.</p> |

CHAPTER 13

AP Profile

13.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure preset profiles for the Zyxel Device.

13.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **Radio** screen (Section 13.2 on page 132) creates radio configurations that can be used by the APs.
- The **SSID** screen (Section 13.3 on page 138) configures three different types of profiles for your networked APs.

13.1.2 What You Need To Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

Wireless Profiles

At the heart of all wireless AP configurations on the Zyxel Device are profiles. A profile represents a group of saved settings that you can use across any number of connected APs. You can set up the following wireless profile types:

- **Radio** - This profile type defines the properties of an AP's radio transmitter. You can have a maximum of 64 radio profiles on the Zyxel Device.
- **SSID** - This profile type defines the properties of a single wireless network signal broadcast by an AP. Each radio on a single AP can broadcast up to 8 SSIDs. You can have a maximum of 64 SSID profiles on the Zyxel Device.
- **Security** - This profile type defines the security settings used by a single SSID. It controls the encryption method required for a wireless client to associate itself with the SSID. You can have a maximum of 64 security profiles on the Zyxel Device.
- **MAC Filtering** - This profile provides an additional layer of security for an SSID, allowing you to block access or allow access to that SSID based on wireless client MAC addresses. If a client's MAC address is on the list, then it is either allowed or denied, depending on how you set up the MAC Filter profile. You can have a maximum of 64 MAC filtering profiles on the Zyxel Device.
- **Layer-2 Isolation** - This profile defines the MAC addresses of the devices that you want to allow the associated wireless clients to have access to when layer-2 isolation is enabled.

SSID

The SSID (Service Set Identifier) is the name that identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. In other words, it is the name of the wireless network that clients use to connect to it.

WEP

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) encryption scrambles all data packets transmitted between the AP and the wireless stations associated with it in order to keep network communications private. Both the wireless stations and the access points must use the same WEP key for data encryption and decryption.

WPA2

WPA2 (IEEE 802.11i) is a wireless security standard that defines stronger encryption, authentication and key management than WPA. Key differences between WPA2 and WEP are improved data encryption and user authentication.

IEEE 802.1x

The IEEE 802.1x standard outlines enhanced security methods for both the authentication of wireless stations and encryption key management. Authentication is done using an external RADIUS server.

IEEE 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming

IEEE 802.11k is a standard for radio resource management of wireless LANs, which allows clients to request neighbor lists from the connected AP and discover the best available AP when roaming. An 802.11k neighbor list can contain up to six BSSIDs with the highest RCPI (Received Channel Power Indicator) value in both bands (5 GHz and 2.4 GHz, in the ratio of 4:2).

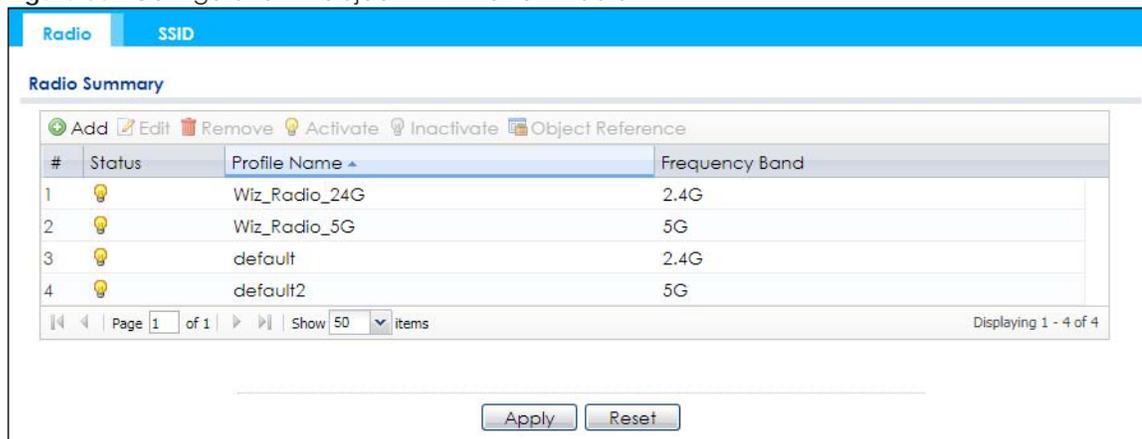
The IEEE 802.11v BSS Transition Management feature lets an AP automatically provide load information of the neighbor APs to clients. It helps the Zyxel Device steer clients to a suitable AP for better performance or load balancing.

13.2 Radio

This screen allows you to create radio profiles for the Zyxel Device. A radio profile is a list of settings that an Zyxel Device can use to configure its radio transmitter(s). To access this screen click **Configuration > Object > AP Profile**.

Note: You can have a maximum of 32 radio profiles on the Zyxel Device.

Figure 80 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > Radio



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 56 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > Radio

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| Add | Click this to add a new radio profile. |
| Edit | Click this to edit the selected radio profile. |
| Remove | Click this to remove the selected radio profile. |
| Activate | To turn on an entry, select it and click Activate . |
| Inactivate | To turn off an entry, select it and click Inactivate . |
| Object Reference | Click this to view which other objects are linked to the selected radio profile. |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific user. |
| Status | This field shows whether or not the entry is activated. A yellow bulb signifies that this rule is active. A gray bulb signifies that this rule is not active. |
| Profile Name | This field indicates the name assigned to the radio profile. |
| Frequency Band | This field indicates the frequency band which this radio profile is configured to use. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

13.2.1 Add/Edit Radio Profile

This screen allows you to create a new radio profile or edit an existing one. To access this screen, click the **Add** button or select a radio profile from the list and click the **Edit** button.

Figure 81 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > [Radio](#) > Add/Edit Profile

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 57 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > [Radio](#) > Add/Edit Profile

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Hide / Show Advanced Settings | Click this to hide or show the Advanced Settings in this window. |
| General Settings | |
| Activate | Select this option to make this profile active. |

Table 57 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > [Radio](#) > Add/Edit Profile (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Profile Name | Enter up to 31 alphanumeric characters to be used as this profile's name. Spaces and underscores are allowed. |
| 802.11 Band | Select whether this radio would use the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band. |
| 802.11 Band Mode | <p>Select how to let wireless clients connect to the AP.</p> <p>If 802.11 Band is set to 2.4G:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 11b/g: allows either IEEE 802.11b or IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device adjusts the transmission rate automatically according to the wireless standard supported by the wireless devices. • 11n: allows IEEE802.11b, IEEE802.11g and IEEE802.11n compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. • 11ax: allows IEEE802.11b, IEEE802.11g, IEEE802.11n, and IEEE802.11ax compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. If the WLAN device isn't compatible with 802.11ax, the Zyxel Device will communicate with the WLAN device using 802.11n, and so on. <p>If 802.11 Band is set to 5G:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 11a: allows only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. • 11n: allows both IEEE802.11n and IEEE802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. • 11ac: allows IEEE802.11n, IEEE802.11a, and IEEE802.11ac compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. If the WLAN device isn't compatible with 802.11ac, the Zyxel Device will communicate with the WLAN device using 802.11n, and so on. • 11ax: allows IEEE802.11n, IEEE802.11a, IEEE802.11ac, and IEEE802.11ax compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. If the WLAN device isn't compatible with 802.11ax, the Zyxel Device will communicate with the WLAN device using 802.11ac, and so on. |
| Channel Width | <p>Select the channel bandwidth you want to use for your wireless network.</p> <p>Select 20 MHz if you want to lessen radio interference with other wireless devices in your neighborhood.</p> <p>Select 20/40 MHz to allow the Zyxel Device to choose the channel bandwidth (20 or 40 MHz) that has least interference.</p> <p>Select 20/40/80 MHz to allow the Zyxel Device to choose the channel bandwidth (20 or 40 or 80 MHz) that has least interference. This option is available only when you select 11ac or 11ax in the 802.11 Band Mode field.</p> <p>Note: If the environment has poor signal-to-noise ratio (SNR), the Zyxel Device will switch to a lower bandwidth.</p> |
| Channel Selection | <p>This is the radio channel which the signal will use for broadcasting by this radio profile.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DCS: Choose Dynamic Channel Selection to have the Zyxel Device choose a radio channel that has least interference. • Manual: Choose from the available radio channels in the list. If your Zyxel Device is outdoor type, be sure to choose non-indoors channels. |
| Enable DCS Client Aware | <p>Select this to have the Zyxel Device switch channels only when there are no clients connected to it. If there is a client connected, the Zyxel Device will not switch channels but generate a log. The Zyxel Device tries to scan and switch channels again at the end of the specified time interval or at the scheduled time.</p> <p>If you disable this then the Zyxel Device switches channels immediately regardless of any client connections. In this instance, clients that are connected to the Zyxel Device when it switches channels are dropped.</p> |
| Blacklist DFS channels in presence of radar | <p>This field is available if 802.11 Band is set to 5G and Channel Selection is set to DCS.</p> <p>Enable this to temporarily blacklist the wireless channels in the Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) range whenever a radar signal is detected by the Zyxel Device.</p> |

Table 57 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > [Radio](#) > Add/Edit Profile (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Enable DCS Client Aware | <p>This field is available when you set Channel Selection to DCS.</p> <p>Select this to have the Zyxel Device switch channels only when there are no clients connected to it. If there is a client connected, the Zyxel Device will not switch channels but generate a log. The Zyxel Device tries to scan and switch channels again at the end of the specified time interval or at the scheduled time.</p> <p>If you disable this then the Zyxel Device switches channels immediately regardless of any client connections. In this instance, clients that are connected to the Zyxel Device when it switches channels are dropped.</p> |
| 2.4 GHz Channel Selection Method | <p>This field is available when you set Channel Selection to DCS.</p> <p>Select how you want to specify the channels the Zyxel Device switches between for 2.4 GHz operation. This field appears only when you choose 802.11b/g/n mode.</p> <p>Select auto to have the Zyxel Device display a 2.4 GHz Channel Deployment field you can use to limit channel switching to 3 or 4 channels.</p> <p>Select manual to select the individual channels the Zyxel Device switches between.</p> <p>Note: The method is automatically set to auto when no channel is selected or any one of the previously selected channels is not supported.</p> |
| Channel ID | <p>This field is available only when you set Channel Selection to DCS and set 2.4 GHz Channel Selection Method to manual.</p> <p>Select the channels that you want the Zyxel Device to use.</p> |
| 2.4 GHz Channel Deployment | <p>This is available when you set Channel Selection to DCS and the 2.4 GHz Channel Selection Method is set to auto.</p> <p>Select Three-Channel Deployment to limit channel switching to channels 1, 6, and 11, the three channels that are sufficiently attenuated to have almost no impact on one another. In other words, this allows you to minimize channel interference by limiting channel-hopping to these three "safe" channels.</p> <p>Select Four-Channel Deployment to limit channel switching to four channels. Depending on the country domain, if the only allowable channels are 1-11 then the Zyxel Device uses channels 1, 4, 7, 11 in this configuration; otherwise, the Zyxel Device uses channels 1, 5, 9, 13 in this configuration. Four channel deployment expands your pool of possible channels while keeping the channel interference to a minimum.</p> |
| Enable 5 GHz DFS Aware | <p>This field is available only when you select 11a, 11a/n or 11ac5G in the 802.11 Band field, set Channel Selection to DCS and set 5 GHz Channel Selection Method to auto.</p> <p>Select this if your APs are operating in an area known to have RADAR devices. This allows the Zyxel Device to downgrade its frequency to below 5 GHz in the event RADAR signal is detected, thus preventing it from interfering with that signal.</p> <p>Enabling this forces the AP to select a non-DFS channel.</p> |
| 5 GHz Channel Selection Method | <p>Select how you want to specify the channels the Zyxel Device switches between for 5 GHz operation.</p> <p>Select Auto to have the Zyxel Device automatically select the best channel.</p> <p>Select manual to select the individual channels the Zyxel Device switches between.</p> <p>Note: The method is automatically set to auto when no channel is selected or any one of the previously selected channels is not supported.</p> |
| Channel ID | <p>This field is available only when you set Channel Selection to DCS and set 5 GHz Channel Selection Method to manual.</p> <p>Select the channels that you want the Zyxel Device to use.</p> |

Table 57 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > [Radio](#) > Add/Edit Profile (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|---|
| Time Interval | Select this option to have the Zyxel Device survey the other APs within its broadcast radius at the end of the specified time interval. |
| DCS Time Interval | <p>This field is available when you set Channel Selection to DCS and select the Time Interval option.</p> <p>Enter a number of minutes. This regulates how often the Zyxel Device surveys the other APs within its broadcast radius. If the channel on which it is currently broadcasting suddenly comes into use by another AP, the Zyxel Device will then dynamically select the next available clean channel or a channel with lower interference.</p> |
| Schedule | Select this option to have the Zyxel Device survey the other APs within its broadcast radius at a specific time on selected days of the week. |
| Start Time | Specify the time of the day (in 24-hour format) to have the Zyxel Device use DCS to automatically scan and find a less-used channel. |
| Week Days | Select each day of the week to have the Zyxel Device use DCS to automatically scan and find a less-used channel. |
| Advanced Settings | |
| Guard Interval | <p><u>This field is available only when the channel width is 20/40MHz or 20/40/80MHz and the 802.11 Mode is either 11n, or 11ac.</u></p> <p>Set the guard interval for this radio profile to either short or long. This option isn't applicable if you set 802.11 Band to 11a or 11b/g and/or choose 20-MHz channel width.</p> <p>The guard interval is the gap introduced between data transmission from users in order to reduce interference. Reducing the interval increases data transfer rates but also increases interference. Increasing the interval reduces data transfer rates but also reduces interference.</p> |
| Enable A-MPDU Aggregation | <p><u>This field is not available when you set 802.11 Mode to 11a or 11b/g.</u></p> <p>Select this to enable A-MPDU aggregation.</p> <p>Message Protocol Data Unit (MPDU) aggregation collects Ethernet frames along with their 802.11n headers and wraps them in a 802.11n MAC header. This method is useful for increasing bandwidth throughput in environments that are prone to high error rates.</p> |
| Enable A-MSDU Aggregation | <p><u>This field is not available when you set 802.11 Mode to 11a or 11b/g.</u></p> <p>Select this to enable A-MSDU aggregation.</p> <p>Mac Service Data Unit (MSDU) aggregation collects Ethernet frames without any of their 802.11n headers and wraps the header-less payload in a single 802.11n MAC header. This method is useful for increasing bandwidth throughput. It is also more efficient than A-MPDU except in environments that are prone to high error rates.</p> |
| RTS/CTS Threshold | <p>Use RTS/CTS to reduce data collisions on the wireless network if you have wireless clients that are associated with the same AP but out of range of one another. When enabled, a wireless client sends an RTS (Request To Send) and then waits for a CTS (Clear To Send) before it transmits. This stops wireless clients from transmitting packets at the same time (and causing data collisions).</p> <p>A wireless client sends an RTS for all packets larger than the number (of bytes) that you enter here. Set the RTS/CTS equal to or higher than the fragmentation threshold to turn RTS/CTS off.</p> |
| Beacon Interval | When a wirelessly networked device sends a beacon, it includes with it a beacon interval. This specifies the time period before the Zyxel Device sends the beacon again. The interval tells receiving devices on the network how long they can wait in low-power mode before waking up to handle the beacon. A high value helps save current consumption of the access point. |

Table 57 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > [Radio](#) > Add/Edit Profile (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| DTIM | Delivery Traffic Indication Message (DTIM) is the time period after which broadcast and multicast packets are transmitted to mobile clients in the Active Power Management mode. A high DTIM value can cause clients to lose connectivity with the network. This value can be set from 1 to 255. |
| Enable Signal Threshold | Select the check box to use the signal threshold to ensure wireless clients receive good throughput. This allows only wireless clients with a strong signal to connect to the AP. Clear the check box to not require wireless clients to have a minimum signal strength to connect to the AP. |
| Station Signal Threshold | Set a minimum client signal strength. A wireless client is allowed to connect to the AP only when its signal strength is stronger than the specified threshold. -20 dBm is the strongest signal you can require and -76 is the weakest. |
| Disassociate Station Threshold | Set a minimum kick-off signal strength. When a wireless client's signal strength is lower than the specified threshold, the Zyxel Device disconnects the wireless client from the AP. -20 dBm is the strongest signal you can require and -90 is the weakest. |
| Allow Station Connection after Multiple Retries | Select this option to allow a wireless client to try to associate with the AP again after it is disconnected due to weak signal strength. |
| Station Retry Count | Set the maximum number of times a wireless client can attempt to re-connect to the AP |
| Allow 802.11n/ac/ax stations only | Select this option to allow only 802.11 n/ac/ax clients to connect, and reject 802.11a/b/g clients. |
| Multicast Settings | |
| Transmission Mode | Specify how the Zyxel Device handles wireless multicast traffic. Select Multicast to Unicast to broadcast wireless multicast traffic to all of the wireless clients as unicast traffic. Unicast traffic dynamically changes the data rate based on the application's bandwidth requirements. The retransmit mechanism of unicast traffic provides more reliable transmission of the multicast traffic, although it also produces duplicate packets. Select Fixed Multicast Rate to send multicast traffic to all wireless clients at a single data rate. You must know the multicast application's bandwidth requirements and set it in the following field. |
| Multicast Rate(Mbps) | If you set Transmission Mode to Fixed Multicast Rate , select a data rate at which the Zyxel Device transmits multicast packets to wireless clients. For example, to deploy 4 Mbps video, select a fixed multicast rate higher than 4 Mbps. |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes. |

13.3 SSID

The SSID screens allow you to configure three different types of profiles for your networked APs: an SSID list, which can assign specific SSID configurations to your APs; a security list, which can assign specific encryption methods to the APs when allowing wireless clients to connect to them; and a MAC filter list, which can limit connections to an AP based on wireless clients MAC addresses.

13.3.1 SSID List

This screen allows you to create and manage SSID configurations that can be used by the APs. An SSID, or Service Set IDentifier, is basically the name of the wireless network to which a wireless client can connect. The SSID appears as readable text to any device capable of scanning for wireless frequencies (such as the WiFi adapter in a laptop), and is displayed as the wireless network name when a person makes a connection to it.

To access this screen click **Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > SSID List**.

Note: You cannot add or remove an SSID profile after running the setup wizard.

Figure 82 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > SSID List (Default)

| # | Profile Name | SSID | Security Profile | QoS | MAC Filtering ... | Layer-2 Isolati... | VLAN ID |
|---|--------------|------------|------------------|-----|-------------------|--------------------|---------|
| 1 | default | Zyxel-821A | default | WMM | disable | disable | 1 |

Figure 83 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > SSID List (After wizard setup)

| # | Profile Name | SSID | Security Profile | QoS | MAC Filtering ... | Layer-2 Isolati... | VLAN ID |
|---|--------------|------------|-------------------|-----|-------------------|--------------------|---------|
| 1 | Wiz_SSID_1 | Zyxel | Wiz_SEC_Profil... | WMM | disable | disable | 1 |
| 2 | Wiz_SSID_2 | Zyxel | Wiz_SEC_Profil... | WMM | disable | disable | 1 |
| 3 | Wiz_SSID_3 | Zyxel | Wiz_SEC_Profil... | WMM | disable | disable | 1 |
| 4 | Wiz_SSID_4 | Zyxel | Wiz_SEC_Profil... | WMM | disable | disable | 1 |
| 5 | Wiz_SSID_5 | Zyxel | Wiz_SEC_Profil... | WMM | disable | disable | 1 |
| 6 | Wiz_SSID_6 | Zyxel | Wiz_SEC_Profil... | WMM | disable | disable | 1 |
| 7 | Wiz_SSID_7 | Zyxel | Wiz_SEC_Profil... | WMM | disable | disable | 1 |
| 8 | Wiz_SSID_8 | Zyxel | Wiz_SEC_Profil... | WMM | disable | disable | 1 |
| 9 | default | Zyxel-821A | default | WMM | disable | disable | 1 |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 58 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > SSID List

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|--|
| Add | Click this to add a new SSID profile. This button is not available after you configure the Zyxel Device using the wizard. |
| Edit | Click this to edit the selected SSID profile. |
| Remove | Click this to remove the selected SSID profile. This button is not available after you configure the Zyxel Device using the wizard. |

Table 58 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > SSID List (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|--|
| Object Reference | Click this to view which other objects are linked to the selected SSID profile (for example, radio profile). |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific user. |
| Profile Name | This field indicates the name assigned to the SSID profile. |
| SSID | This field indicates the SSID name as it appears to wireless clients. |
| Security Profile | This field indicates which (if any) security profile is associated with the SSID profile. |
| QoS | This field indicates the QoS type associated with the SSID profile. |
| MAC Filtering Profile | This field indicates which (if any) MAC filter Profile is associated with the SSID profile. |
| Layer-2 Isolation Profile | This field indicates which (if any) layer-2 isolation Profile is associated with the SSID profile. |
| VLAN ID | This field indicates the VLAN ID associated with the SSID profile. |

13.3.2 Add/Edit SSID Profile

This screen allows you to create a new SSID profile or edit an existing one. To access this screen, click the **Add** button or select a SSID profile from the list and click the **Edit** button.

Figure 84 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > SSID List > Add/Edit SSID Profile

Add SSID Profile

Create new Object ▾

Profile Name:

SSID:

Security Profile:

MAC Filtering Profile:

Layer-2 Isolation Profile:

QoS:

Rate Limiting (Per Station Traffic Rate)

Downlink: (0~160, 0 is unlimited)

Uplink: (0~160, 0 is unlimited)

VLAN ID: (1~4094)

Hidden SSID

Enable Intra-BSS Traffic blocking

Enable U-APSD

Enable Proxy ARP

802.11k/v Assisted Roaming

Schedule SSID

Sunday: **from:** **to:**

Monday: **from:** **to:**

Tuesday: **from:** **to:**

Wednesday: **from:** **to:**

Thursday: **from:** **to:**

Friday: **from:** **to:**

Saturday: **from:** **to:**

OK Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 59 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > SSID List > Add/Edit SSID Profile

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|---|
| Create new Object | Select an object type from the list to create a new one associated with this SSID profile. |
| Profile Name | Enter up to 31 alphanumeric characters for the profile name. This name is only visible in the Web Configurator and is only for management purposes. Spaces and underscores are allowed. |
| SSID | Enter the SSID name for this profile. This is the name visible on the network to wireless clients. Enter up to 32 characters, spaces and underscores are allowed. |
| Security Profile | <p>Select a security profile from this list to associate with this SSID. If none exist, you can use the Create new Object menu to create one.</p> <p>Note: It is highly recommended that you create security profiles for all of your SSIDs to enhance your network security.</p> |
| MAC Filtering Profile | <p>Select a MAC filtering profile from the list to associate with this SSID. If none exist, you can use the Create new Object menu to create one.</p> <p>MAC filtering allows you to limit the wireless clients connecting to your network through a particular SSID by wireless client MAC addresses. Any clients that have MAC addresses not in the MAC filtering profile of allowed addresses are denied connections.</p> <p>The disable setting means no MAC filtering is used.</p> |
| Layer-2 Isolation Profile | <p>Select a layer-2 isolation profile from the list to associate with this SSID. If none exist, you can use the Create new Object menu to create one.</p> <p>Layer-2 isolation allows you to prevent wireless clients associated with your Zyxel Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.</p> <p>The disable setting means no layer-2 isolation is used.</p> |
| QoS | <p>Select a Quality of Service (QoS) access category to associate with this SSID. Access categories minimize the delay of data packets across a wireless network. Certain categories, such as video or voice, are given a higher priority due to the time sensitive nature of their data packets.</p> <p>QoS access categories are as follows:</p> <p>disable: Turns off QoS for this SSID. All data packets are treated equally and not tagged with access categories.</p> <p>WMM: Enables automatic tagging of data packets. The Zyxel Device assigns access categories to the SSID by examining data as it passes through it and making a best guess effort. If something looks like video traffic, for instance, it is tagged as such.</p> <p>WMM_VOICE: All wireless traffic to the SSID is tagged as voice data. This is recommended if an SSID is used for activities like placing and receiving VoIP phone calls.</p> <p>WMM_VIDEO: All wireless traffic to the SSID is tagged as video data. This is recommended for activities like video conferencing.</p> <p>WMM_BEST_EFFORT: All wireless traffic to the SSID is tagged as "best effort," meaning the data travels the best route it can without displacing higher priority traffic. This is good for activities that do not require the best bandwidth throughput, such as surfing the Internet.</p> <p>WMM_BACKGROUND: All wireless traffic to the SSID is tagged as low priority or "background traffic", meaning all other access categories take precedence over this one. If traffic from an SSID does not have strict throughput requirements, then this access category is recommended. For example, an SSID that only has network printers connected to it.</p> |
| Rate Limiting | |
| Downlink | Define the maximum incoming transmission data rate (either in mbps or kbps) on a perstation basis. |

Table 59 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > SSID List > Add/Edit SSID Profile (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Uplink | Define the maximum outgoing transmission data rate (either in mbps or kbps) on a perstation basis. |
| VLAN ID | Enter a VLAN ID for the Zyxel Device to use to tag traffic originating from this SSID. |
| Hidden SSID | Select this if you want to "hide" your SSID from wireless clients. This tells any wireless clients in the vicinity of the AP using this SSID profile not to display its SSID name as a potential connection. Not all wireless clients respect this flag and display it anyway. When a SSID is "hidden" and a wireless client cannot see it, the only way you can connect to the SSID is by manually entering the SSID name in your wireless connection setup screen(s) (these vary by client, client connectivity software, and operating system). |
| Enable Intra-BSS Traffic Blocking | Select this option to prevent crossover traffic from within the same SSID on the Zyxel Device. |
| Enable U-APSD | Select this option to enable Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery (U-APSD), which is also known as WMM-Power Save. This helps increase battery life for battery-powered wireless clients connected to the Zyxel Device using this SSID profile. |
| Enable Proxy ARP | The Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an IP address to a MAC address. An ARP broadcast is sent to all devices in the same Ethernet network to request the MAC address of a target IP address. Select this option to allow the Zyxel Device to answer ARP requests for an IP address on behalf of a client associated with this SSID. This can reduce broadcast traffic and improve network performance. |
| 802.11k/v Assisted Roaming | Select this option to enable IEEE 802.11k/v assisted roaming on the Zyxel Device. When the connected clients request 802.11k neighbor lists, the Zyxel Device will response with a list of neighbor APs that can be candidates for roaming. |
| Schedule SSID | Select this option and set whether the SSID is enabled or disabled on each day of the week. You also need to select the hour and minute (in 24-hour format) to specify the time period of each day during which the SSID is enabled/enabled. |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes. |

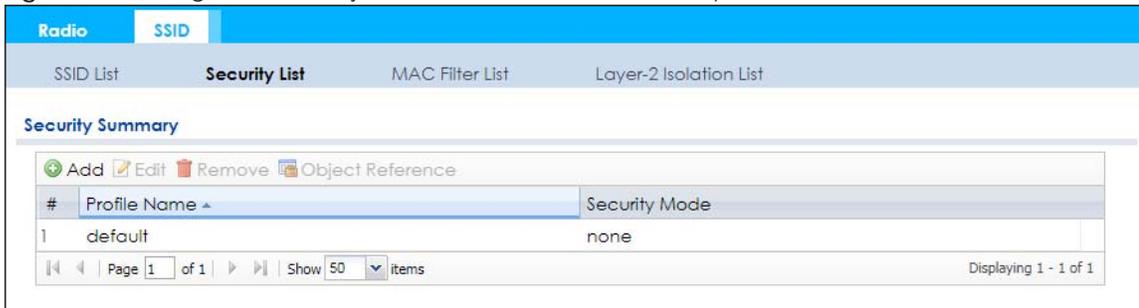
13.4 Security List

This screen allows you to manage wireless security configurations that can be used by your SSIDs. Wireless security is implemented strictly between the AP broadcasting the SSID and the stations that are connected to it.

To access this screen click **Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Security List**.

Note: You can have a maximum of 32 security profiles on the Zyxel Device.

Figure 85 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Security List



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 60 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Security List

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|---|
| Add | Click this to add a new security profile. |
| Edit | Click this to edit the selected security profile. |
| Remove | Click this to remove the selected security profile. |
| Object Reference | Click this to view which other objects are linked to the selected security profile (for example, SSID profile). |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific user. |
| Profile Name | This field indicates the name assigned to the security profile. |
| Security Mode | This field indicates this profile's security mode (if any). |

13.4.1 Add/Edit Security Profile

This screen allows you to create a new security profile or edit an existing one. To access this screen, click the **Add** button or select a security profile from the list and click the **Edit** button.

Note: This screen's options change based on the **Security Mode** selected. Only the default screen is displayed here.

Figure 86 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Security List > Add/Edit Security Profile

Add Security Profile [?] [X]

General Settings

Profile Name: ⓘ

Security Mode:

Authentication Settings

Enterprise

ReAuthentication Timer: (30~30000 seconds, 0 is unlimited)

Personal

Pre-Shared Key:

Cipher Type:

Idle timeout: (30-30000 seconds)

Group Key Update Timer: (30-30000 seconds)

Pre-Authentication:

Management Frame Protection Optional

Required

Radius Settings

Radius Server Type:

Primary Radius Server Activate

Radius Server IP Address: ⓘ

Radius Server Port: ⓘ (1~65535)

Radius Server Secret: ⓘ

Secondary Radius Server Activate

Radius Server IP Address: ⓘ

Radius Server Port: ⓘ (1~65535)

Radius Server Secret: ⓘ

Primary Accounting Server Activate

Accounting Server IP Address:

Accounting Server Port: (1~65535)

Accounting Share Secret:

Secondary Accounting Server Activate

Accounting Server IP Address:

Accounting Server Port: (1~65535)

Accounting Share Secret:

Accounting Interim Update

Interim Update Interval: (1-1440 minutes)

General Server Settings

NAS IP Address: (Optional)

NAS Identifier: (Optional)

OK Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 61 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Security List > Add/Edit Security Profile

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <u>General Settings</u> | |
| Profile Name | Enter up to 31 alphanumeric characters for the profile name. This name is only visible in the Web Configurator and is only for management purposes. Spaces and underscores are allowed. |
| Security Mode | Select a security mode from the list: none , enhanced-open , wep , wpa2 , wpa2-mix or wpa3 . enhanced-open uses Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE) which encrypts the wireless connection when possible. |
| <u>Authentication Settings</u> | |
| <u>Enterprise</u> | Select this to enable 802.1x secure authentication with a RADIUS server. |
| ReAuthentication Timer | Enter the interval (in seconds) between authentication requests. Enter a 0 for unlimited time. |
| <u>Personal</u> | This field is available when you select the wpa2 , wpa2-mix or wpa3 security mode. Select this option to use a Pre-Shared Key (PSK) with WPA2 encryption or Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE) with WPA3 encryption. |
| Pre-Shared Key | Enter a pre-shared key of between 8 and 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols) or 64 hexadecimal characters. |
| <u>Transition Mode</u> | Enable this for backwards compatibility. This option is only available if the Security Mode is wpa3 or enhanced-open. This creates two virtual APs (VAPs) with a primary (wpa3 or enhanced-open) and fallback (wpa2 or none) security method. If the Security Mode is wpa3, enabling this will force Management Frame Protection to be set to Optional. If this is disabled or if the Security Mode is enhanced-open, Management Frame Protection will be set to Required. |
| Cipher Type | Select an encryption cipher type from the list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> auto - This automatically chooses the best available cipher based on the cipher in use by the wireless client that is attempting to make a connection. aes - This is the Advanced Encryption Standard encryption method. It is a more recent development over TKIP and considerably more robust. Not all wireless clients may support this. |
| Idle Timeout | Enter the idle interval (in seconds) that a client can be idle before authentication is discontinued. |
| Authentication Type | Select a WEP authentication method. Choices are Open or Share key. Share key is only available if you are not using 802.1x. |
| Key Length | Select the bit-length of the encryption key to be used in WEP connections. If you select WEP-64 : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter 10 hexadecimal digits in the range of "A-F", "a-f" and "0-9" (for example, 0x11AA22BB33) for each Key used. or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter 5 ASCII characters (case sensitive) ranging from "a-z", "A-Z" and "0-9" (for example, MyKey) for each Key used. If you select WEP-128 : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter 26 hexadecimal digits in the range of "A-F", "a-f" and "0-9" (for example, 0x00112233445566778899AABBCC) for each Key used. or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter 13 ASCII characters (case sensitive) ranging from "a-z", "A-Z" and "0-9" (for example, MyKey12345678) for each Key used. |

Table 61 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Security List > Add/Edit Security Profile (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Key 1~4 | Based on your Key Length selection, enter the appropriate length hexadecimal or ASCII key. |
| Group Key Update Timer | Enter the interval (in seconds) at which the AP updates the group WPA2 encryption key. |
| Management Frame Protection | <p>This field is available only when you select wpa2 in the Security Mode field and set Cipher Type to aes.</p> <p>Data frames in 802.11 WLANs can be encrypted and authenticated with WEP, WPA or WPA2. But 802.11 management frames, such as beacon/probe response, association request, association response, de-authentication and disassociation are always unauthenticated and unencrypted. IEEE 802.11w Protected Management Frames allows APs to use the existing security mechanisms (encryption and authentication methods defined in IEEE 802.11i WPA/WPA2) to protect management frames. This helps prevent wireless DoS attacks.</p> <p>Select the check box to enable management frame protection (MFP) to add security to 802.11 management frames.</p> <p>Select Optional if you do not require the wireless clients to support MFP. Management frames will be encrypted if the clients support MFP.</p> <p>Select Required and wireless clients must support MFP in order to join the Zyxel Device's wireless network.</p> |
| <u>Radius Settings</u> | |
| Radius Server Type | This shows External and the Zyxel Device uses an external RADIUS server for authentication. |
| Primary / Secondary Radius Server Activate | Select this to have the Zyxel Device use the specified RADIUS server. |
| Radius Server IP Address | Enter the IP address of the RADIUS server to be used for authentication. |
| Radius Server Port | Enter the port number of the RADIUS server to be used for authentication. |
| Radius Server Secret | Enter the shared secret password of the RADIUS server to be used for authentication. |
| Primary / Secondary Accounting Server Activate | Select the check box to enable user accounting through an external authentication server. |
| Accounting Server IP Address | Enter the IP address of the external accounting server in dotted decimal notation. |
| Accounting Server Port | Enter the port number of the external accounting server. The default port number is 1813. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so with additional information. |
| Accounting Share Secret | Enter a password (up to 128 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external accounting server and the Zyxel Device. The key must be the same on the external accounting server and your Zyxel Device. The key is not sent over the network. |
| Accounting Interim Update | <p>This field is available only when you enable user accounting through an external authentication server.</p> <p>Select this to have the Zyxel Device send subscriber status updates to the accounting server at the interval you specify.</p> |
| Interim Update Interval | Specify the time interval for how often the Zyxel Device is to send a subscriber status update to the accounting server. |
| <u>General Server Settings</u> | |
| NAS IP Address | If the RADIUS server requires the Zyxel Device to provide the NAS (Network Access Server) IP address attribute, enter it here. |

Table 61 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Security List > Add/Edit Security Profile (continued)

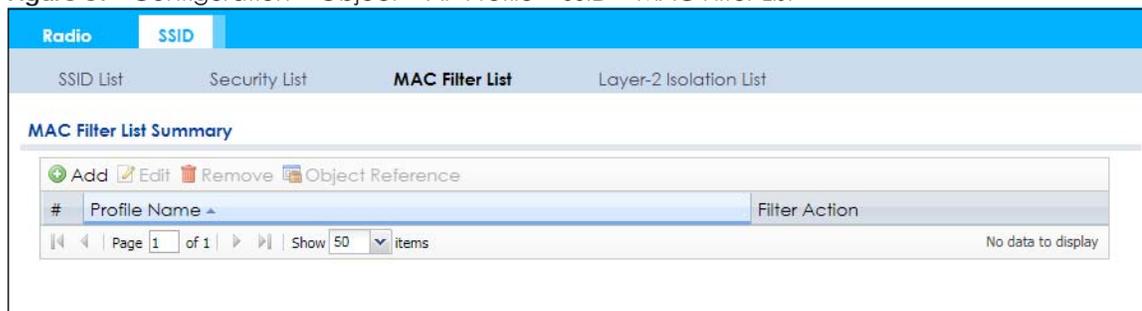
| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|---|
| NAS Identifier | If the RADIUS server requires the Zyxel Device to provide the NAS (Network Access Server) identifier attribute, enter it here. The NAS identifier is to identify the source of access request. It could be the NAS's fully qualified domain name. |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes. |

13.5 MAC Filter List

This screen allows you to create and manage security configurations that can be used by your SSIDs. To access this screen click **Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > MAC Filter List**.

Note: You can have a maximum of 32 MAC filtering profiles on the Zyxel Device.

Figure 87 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > MAC Filter List



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 62 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > MAC Filter List

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| Add | Click this to add a new MAC filtering profile. |
| Edit | Click this to edit the selected MAC filtering profile. |
| Remove | Click this to remove the selected MAC filtering profile. |
| Object Reference | Click this to view which other objects are linked to the selected MAC filtering profile (for example, SSID profile). |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific user. |
| Profile Name | This field indicates the name assigned to the MAC filtering profile. |
| Filter Action | This field indicates this profile's filter action (if any). |

13.5.1 Add/Edit MAC Filter Profile

This screen allows you to create a new MAC filtering profile or edit an existing one. To access this screen, click the **Add** button or select a MAC filter profile from the list and click the **Edit** button.

Note: Each MAC filtering profile can include a maximum of 512 MAC addresses.

Figure 88 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > MAC Filter List > Add/Edit MAC Filter Profile

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 63 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > MAC Filter List > Add/Edit MAC Filter Profile

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------|--|
| Profile Name | Enter up to 31 alphanumeric characters for the profile name. This name is only visible in the Web Configurator and is only for management purposes. Spaces and underscores are allowed. |
| Filter Action | Select allow to permit the wireless client with the MAC addresses in this profile to connect to the network through the associated SSID; select deny to block the wireless clients with the specified MAC addresses. |
| Add | Click this to add a MAC address to the profile's list. |
| Edit | Click this to edit the selected MAC address in the profile's list. |
| Remove | Click this to remove the selected MAC address from the profile's list. |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific user. |
| MAC | This field specifies a MAC address associated with this profile. You can click the MAC address to make it editable. |
| Description | This field displays a description for the MAC address associated with this profile. You can click the description to make it editable. Enter up to 60 characters, spaces and underscores allowed. |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes. |

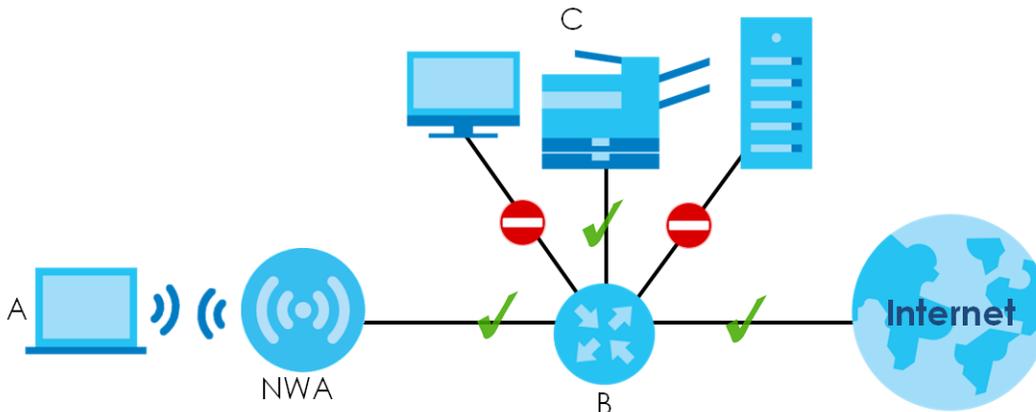
13.6 Layer-2 Isolation List

Layer-2 isolation is used to prevent wireless clients associated with your Zyxel Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.

In the following example, layer-2 isolation is enabled on the Zyxel Device to allow a guest wireless client (A) to access the main network router (B). The router provides access to the Internet and the network printer (C) while preventing the client from accessing other computers and servers on the network. The client can communicate with other wireless clients only if Intra-BSS Traffic blocking is disabled.

Note: Intra-BSS Traffic Blocking is activated when you enable layer-2 isolation.

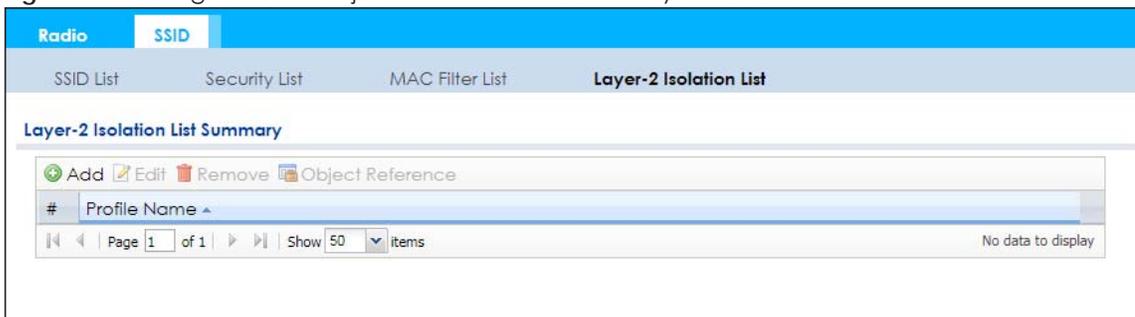
Figure 89 Layer-2 Isolation Application



MAC addresses that are not listed in the layer-2 isolation table are blocked from communicating with the Zyxel Device's wireless clients except for broadcast packets. Layer-2 isolation does not check the traffic between wireless clients that are associated with the same AP. Intra-BSS traffic allows wireless clients associated with the same AP to communicate with each other.

This screen allows you to specify devices you want the users on your wireless networks to access. To access this screen click **Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Layer-2 Isolation List**.

Figure 90 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Layer-2 Isolation List



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 64 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Layer-2 Isolation List

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| Add | Click this to add a new layer-2 isolation profile. |
| Edit | Click this to edit the selected layer-2 isolation profile. |
| Remove | Click this to remove the selected layer-2 isolation profile. |
| Object Reference | Click this to view which other objects are linked to the selected layer-2 isolation profile (for example, SSID profile). |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific user. |
| Profile Name | This field indicates the name assigned to the layer-2 isolation profile. |

13.6.1 Add/Edit Layer-2 Isolation Profile

This screen allows you to create a new layer-2 isolation profile or edit an existing one. To access this screen, click the **Add** button or select a layer-2 isolation profile from the list and click the **Edit** button.

Note: You need to know the MAC address of each wireless client, AP, computer or router that you want to allow to communicate with the Zyxel Device's wireless clients.

Figure 91 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Layer-2 Isolation List > Add/Edit Layer-2 Isolation Profile

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 65 Configuration > Object > AP Profile > SSID > Layer-2 Isolation List > Add/Edit Layer-2 Isolation Profile

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------|---|
| Profile Name | Enter up to 31 alphanumeric characters for the profile name. This name is only visible in the Web Configurator and is only for management purposes. Spaces and underscores are allowed. |
| Add | Click this to add a MAC address to the profile's list. |
| Edit | Click this to edit the selected MAC address in the profile's list. |
| Remove | Click this to remove the selected MAC address from the profile's list. |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific user. |
| MAC | This field specifies a MAC address associated with this profile. You can click the MAC address to make it editable. |
| Description | This field displays a description for the MAC address associated with this profile. You can click the description to make it editable. Enter up to 60 characters, spaces and underscores allowed. |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes. |

CHAPTER 14

MON Profile

14.1 Overview

This screen allows you to set up monitor mode configurations that allow your Zyxel Device to scan for other wireless devices in the vicinity. Once detected, you can use the **Wireless > MON Mode** screen (Section 10.3 on page 110) to classify them as either rogue or friendly.

Not all Zyxel Devices support monitor mode and rogue APs detection.

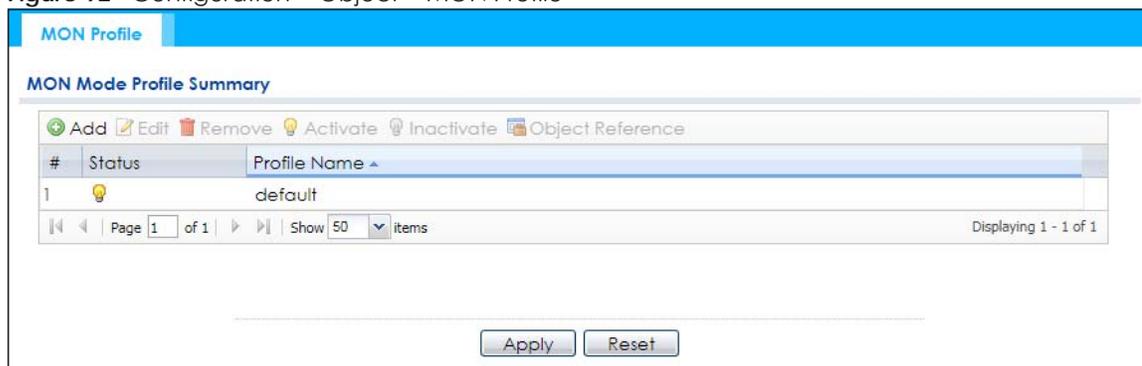
14.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

The **MON Profile** screen (Section 14.2 on page 151) creates preset monitor mode configurations that can be used by the Zyxel Device.

14.2 MON Profile

This screen allows you to create monitor mode configurations that can be used by the APs. To access this screen, log into the Web Configurator, and click **Configuration > Object > MON Profile**.

Figure 92 Configuration > Object > MON Profile



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 66 Configuration > Object > MON Profile

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|---|
| Add | Click this to add a new monitor mode profile. |
| Edit | Click this to edit the selected monitor mode profile. |
| Remove | Click this to remove the selected monitor mode profile. |
| Activate | To turn on an entry, select it and click Activate . |
| Inactivate | To turn off an entry, select it and click Inactivate . |

Table 66 Configuration > Object > MON Profile (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|---|
| Object Reference | Click this to view which other objects are linked to the selected monitor mode profile (for example, an AP management profile). |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific profile. |
| Status | This field shows whether or not the entry is activated. |
| Profile Name | This field indicates the name assigned to the monitor profile. |

14.2.1 Add/Edit MON Profile

This screen allows you to create a new monitor mode profile or edit an existing one. To access this screen, click the **Add** button or select an existing monitor mode profile and click the **Edit** button. See [Section 1.2.3 on page 15](#) for more information about MON Mode.

Figure 93 Configuration > Object > MON Profile > Add/Edit MON Profile

Add MON Profile

General Settings

Activate

Profile Name:

Channel dwell time: (100ms~1000ms)

Scan Channel Mode:

Set Scan Channel List (2.4 GHz)

| Channel ID |
|------------|
| 1 |
| 2 |
| 3 |
| 4 |
| 5 |
| 6 |
| 7 |

Set Scan Channel List (5 GHz)

| Channel ID |
|------------|
| 36 |
| 40 |
| 44 |
| 48 |
| 149 |
| 153 |
| 157 |

OK Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 67 Configuration > Object > MON Profile > Add/Edit MON Profile

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Activate | Select this to activate this monitor mode profile. |
| Profile Name | This field indicates the name assigned to the monitor mode profile. |
| Channel dwell time | Enter the interval (in milliseconds) before the Zyxel Device switches to another channel for monitoring. |
| Scan Channel Mode | <p>Select auto to have the Zyxel Device switch to the next sequential channel once the Channel dwell time expires.</p> <p>Select manual to set specific channels through which to cycle sequentially when the Channel dwell time expires. Selecting this options makes the Scan Channel List options available.</p> |
| Set Scan Channel List (2.4 GHz) | <p>Select one or more than one channel to have the Zyxel Device using this profile scan the channel(s) when Scan Channel Mode is set to manual.</p> <p>These channels are limited to the 2.4 GHz range (802.11 b/g/n/ax).</p> |
| Set Scan Channel List (5 GHz) | <p>Select one or more than one channel to have the Zyxel Device using this profile scan the channel(s) when Scan Channel Mode is set to manual.</p> <p>These channels are limited to the 5 GHz range (802.11 a/n/ac/ax). Not all Zyxel Devices support both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz frequency bands.</p> |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes. |

CHAPTER 15

WDS Profile

15.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure WDS (Wireless Distribution System) profiles for the Zyxel Device to form a WDS with other APs.

15.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

The **WDS Profile** screen (Section 15.2 on page 154) creates preset WDS configurations that can be used by the Zyxel Device.

15.2 WDS Profile

This screen allows you to manage and create WDS profiles that can be used by the APs. To access this screen, click **Configuration > Object > WDS Profile**.

Figure 94 Configuration > Object > WDS Profile

| # | Profile Name | WDS SSID |
|---|--------------|-----------|
| 1 | default | Zyxel_WDS |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 68 Configuration > Object > WDS Profile

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------|---|
| Add | Click this to add a new profile. |
| Edit | Click this to edit the selected profile. |
| Remove | Click this to remove the selected profile. |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific profile. |
| Profile Name | This field indicates the name assigned to the profile. |
| WDS SSID | This field shows the SSID specified in this WDS profile. |

15.2.1 Add/Edit WDS Profile

This screen allows you to create a new WDS profile or edit an existing one. To access this screen, click the **Add** button or select an existing profile and click the **Edit** button.

Figure 95 Configuration > Object > WDS Profile > Add/Edit WDS Profile

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 69 Configuration > Object > WDS Profile > Add/Edit WDS Profile

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|--|
| Profile Name | Enter up to 31 alphanumeric characters for the profile name. |
| WDS SSID | Enter the SSID with which you want the Zyxel Device to connect to a root AP or repeater to form a WDS. |
| Pre-Shared Key | Enter a pre-shared key of between 8 and 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols) or 64 hexadecimal characters. The key is used to encrypt the traffic between the APs. |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes. |

CHAPTER 16

Certificates

16.1 Overview

The Zyxel Device can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. A certificate contains the certificate owner's identity and public key. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.

16.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **My Certificates** screens ([Section 16.2 on page 159](#)) generate and export self-signed certificates or certification requests and import the Zyxel Device's CA-signed certificates.
- The **Trusted Certificates** screens ([Section 16.3 on page 166](#)) save CA certificates and trusted remote host certificates to the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device trusts any valid certificate that you have imported as a trusted certificate. It also trusts any valid certificate signed by any of the certificates that you have imported as a trusted certificate.

16.1.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

When using public-key cryptology for authentication, each host has two keys. One key is public and can be made openly available. The other key is private and must be kept secure.

These keys work like a handwritten signature (in fact, certificates are often referred to as "digital signatures"). Only you can write your signature exactly as it should look. When people know what your signature looks like, they can verify whether something was signed by you, or by someone else. In the same way, your private key "writes" your digital signature and your public key allows people to verify whether data was signed by you, or by someone else.

This process works as follows:

- 1 Tim wants to send a message to Jenny. He needs her to be sure that it comes from him, and that the message content has not been altered by anyone else along the way. Tim generates a public key pair (one public key and one private key).
- 2 Tim keeps the private key and makes the public key openly available. This means that anyone who receives a message seeming to come from Tim can read it and verify whether it is really from him or not.
- 3 Tim uses his private key to sign the message and sends it to Jenny.
- 4 Jenny receives the message and uses Tim's public key to verify it. Jenny knows that the message is from Tim, and that although other people may have been able to read the message, no-one can have altered it (because they cannot re-sign the message with Tim's private key).

- 5 Additionally, Jenny uses her own private key to sign a message and Tim uses Jenny's public key to verify the message.

The Zyxel Device uses certificates based on public-key cryptology to authenticate users attempting to establish a connection, not to encrypt the data that you send after establishing a connection. The method used to secure the data that you send through an established connection depends on the type of connection.

The certification authority uses its private key to sign certificates. Anyone can then use the certification authority's public key to verify the certificates.

A certification path is the hierarchy of certification authority certificates that validate a certificate. The Zyxel Device does not trust a certificate if any certificate on its path has expired or been revoked.

Certification authorities maintain directory servers with databases of valid and revoked certificates. A directory of certificates that have been revoked before the scheduled expiration is called a CRL (Certificate Revocation List). The Zyxel Device can check a peer's certificate against a directory server's list of revoked certificates. The framework of servers, software, procedures and policies that handles keys is called PKI (public-key infrastructure).

Advantages of Certificates

Certificates offer the following benefits.

- The Zyxel Device only has to store the certificates of the certification authorities that you decide to trust, no matter how many devices you need to authenticate.
- Key distribution is simple and very secure since you can freely distribute public keys and you never need to transmit private keys.

Self-signed Certificates

You can have the Zyxel Device act as a certification authority and sign its own certificates.

Factory Default Certificate

The Zyxel Device generates its own unique self-signed certificate when you first turn it on. This certificate is referred to in the GUI as the factory default certificate.

Certificate File Formats

Any certificate that you want to import has to be in one of these file formats:

- Binary X.509: This is an ITU-T recommendation that defines the formats for X.509 certificates.
- PEM (Base-64) encoded X.509: This Privacy Enhanced Mail format uses lowercase letters, uppercase letters and numerals to convert a binary X.509 certificate into a printable form.
- Binary PKCS#7: This is a standard that defines the general syntax for data (including digital signatures) that may be encrypted. A PKCS #7 file is used to transfer a public key certificate. The private key is not included. The Zyxel Device currently allows the importation of a PKCS#7 file that contains a single certificate.
- PEM (Base-64) encoded PKCS#7: This Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format uses lowercase letters, uppercase letters and numerals to convert a binary PKCS#7 certificate into a printable form.

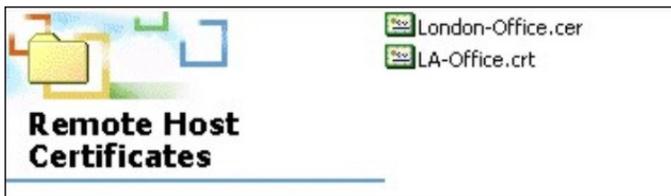
- Binary PKCS#12: This is a format for transferring public key and private key certificates. The private key in a PKCS #12 file is within a password-encrypted envelope. The file's password is not connected to your certificate's public or private passwords. Exporting a PKCS #12 file creates this and you must provide it to decrypt the contents when you import the file into the Zyxel Device.

Note: Be careful not to convert a binary file to text during the transfer process. It is easy for this to occur since many programs use text files by default.

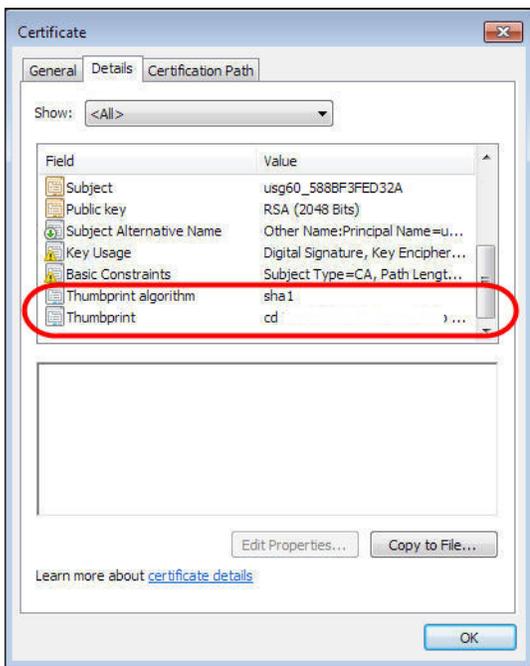
16.1.3 Verifying a Certificate

Before you import a trusted certificate into the Zyxel Device, you should verify that you have the correct certificate. You can do this using the certificate's fingerprint. A certificate's fingerprint is a message digest calculated using the MD5 or SHA1 algorithm. The following procedure describes how to check a certificate's fingerprint to verify that you have the actual certificate.

- 1 Browse to where you have the certificate saved on your computer.
- 2 Make sure that the certificate has a ".cer" or ".crt" file name extension.



- 3 Double-click the certificate's icon to open the **Certificate** window. Click the **Details** tab and scroll down to the **Thumbprint Algorithm** and **Thumbprint** fields.



- 4 Use a secure method to verify that the certificate owner has the same information in the **Thumbprint Algorithm** and **Thumbprint** fields. The secure method may vary based on your situation. Possible examples would be over the telephone or through an HTTPS connection.

16.2 My Certificates

Click **Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates** to open this screen. This is the Zyxel Device's summary list of certificates and certification requests.

Figure 96 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 70 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| PKI Storage Space in Use | This bar displays the percentage of the Zyxel Device's PKI storage space that is currently in use. When the storage space is almost full, you should consider deleting expired or unnecessary certificates before adding more certificates. |
| Add | Click this to go to the screen where you can have the Zyxel Device generate a certificate or a certification request. |
| Edit | Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to open a screen with an in-depth list of information about the certificate. |
| Remove | The Zyxel Device keeps all of your certificates unless you specifically delete them. Uploading a new firmware or default configuration file does not delete your certificates. To remove an entry, select it and click Remove . The Zyxel Device confirms you want to remove it before doing so. Subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action. |
| Object Reference | You cannot delete certificates that any of the Zyxel Device's features are configured to use. Select an entry and click Object Reference to open a screen that shows which settings use the entry. |
| # | This field displays the certificate index number. The certificates are listed in alphabetical order. |
| Name | This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. It is recommended that you give each certificate a unique name. |
| Type | This field displays what kind of certificate this is. REQ represents a certification request and is not yet a valid certificate. Send a certification request to a certification authority, which then issues a certificate. Use the My Certificate Import screen to import the certificate and replace the request. SELF represents a self-signed certificate. CERT represents a certificate issued by a certification authority. |
| Subject | This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information. |

Table 70 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|---|
| Issuer | This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the Subject field. |
| Valid From | This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. |
| Valid To | This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expired! message if the certificate has expired. |
| Import | Click Import to open a screen where you can save a certificate to the Zyxel Device. |
| Refresh | Click Refresh to display the current validity status of the certificates. |

16.2.1 Add My Certificates

Click **Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates** and then the **Add** icon to open the **Add My Certificates** screen. Use this screen to have the Zyxel Device create a self-signed certificate, enroll a certificate with a certification authority or generate a certification request.

Figure 97 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates > Add

Add My Certificates

Configuration

Name:

Subject Information

Host IP Address
 Host Domain Name
 E-Mail
 Organizational Unit: (Optional)
 Organization: (Optional)
 Town(City): (Optional)
 State(Province): (Optional)
 Country: (Optional)

Key Type: RSA-SHA256
 Key Length: 2048 bits

Extended Key Usage

Server Authentication
 Client Authentication

Create a self-signed certificate
 Create a certification request and save it locally for later manual enrollment
 Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online

Enrollment Protocol: Simple Certificate Enrollment protocol(SC)
 CA Server Address:
 CA Certificate: Please select one ... (See Trusted CAs)
 Request Authentication
 Key:

OK Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 71 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates > Add

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Name | Type a name to identify this certificate. You can use up to 31 alphanumeric and ;'~!@#\$\$%^&()_+[]{}',.- characters. |
| Subject Information | <p>Use these fields to record information that identifies the owner of the certificate. You do not have to fill in every field, although you must specify a Host IP Address, Host Domain Name, or E-Mail. The certification authority may add fields (such as a serial number) to the subject information when it issues a certificate. It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.</p> <p>Select a radio button to identify the certificate's owner by IP address, domain name or e-mail address. Type the IP address (in dotted decimal notation), domain name or e-mail address in the field provided. The domain name or e-mail address is for identification purposes only and can be any string.</p> <p>A domain name can be up to 255 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and periods.</p> <p>An e-mail address can be up to 63 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen, the @ symbol, periods and the underscore.</p> |
| Organizational Unit | Identify the organizational unit or department to which the certificate owner belongs. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore. |
| Organization | Identify the company or group to which the certificate owner belongs. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore. |
| Town (City) | Identify the town or city where the certificate owner is located. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore. |
| State (Province) | Identify the state or province where the certificate owner is located. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore. |
| Country | Identify the nation where the certificate owner is located. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore. |
| Key Type | <p>The Zyxel Device uses the RSA (Rivest, Shamir and Adleman) public-key encryption algorithm. SHA1 (Secure Hash Algorithm) and SHA2 are hash algorithms used to authenticate packet data. SHA2-256 or SHA2-512 are part of the SHA2 set of cryptographic functions and they are considered even more secure than SHA1.</p> <p>Select a key type from RSA-SHA256 and RSA-SHA512.</p> |
| Key Length | Select a number from the drop-down list box to determine how many bits the key should use (1024 to 2048). The longer the key, the more secure it is. A longer key also uses more PKI storage space. |
| Extended Key Usage | <p>Select Server Authentication to allow a web server to send clients the certificate to authenticate itself.</p> <p>Select Client Authentication to use the certificate's key to authenticate clients to the secure gateway.</p> |
| | These radio buttons deal with how and when the certificate is to be generated. |
| Create a self-signed certificate | Select this to have the Zyxel Device generate the certificate and act as the Certification Authority (CA) itself. This way you do not need to apply to a certification authority for certificates. |
| Create a certification request and save it locally for later manual enrollment | <p>Select this to have the Zyxel Device generate and store a request for a certificate. Use the My Certificate Edit screen to view the certification request and copy it to send to the certification authority.</p> <p>Copy the certification request from the My Certificate Edit screen and then send it to the certification authority.</p> |

Table 71 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates > Add (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online | <p>Select this to have the Zyxel Device generate a request for a certificate and apply to a certification authority for a certificate.</p> <p>You must have the certification authority's certificate already imported in the Trusted Certificates screen.</p> <p>When you select this option, you must select the certification authority's enrollment protocol and the certification authority's certificate from the drop-down list boxes and enter the certification authority's server address. You also need to fill in the Reference Number and Key if the certification authority requires them.</p> |
| Enrollment Protocol | <p>This field applies when you select Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online. Select the certification authority's enrollment protocol from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) is a TCP-based enrollment protocol that was developed by VeriSign and Cisco.</p> <p>Certificate Management Protocol (CMP) is a TCP-based enrollment protocol that was developed by the Public Key Infrastructure X.509 working group of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) and is specified in RFC 2510.</p> |
| CA Server Address | <p>This field applies when you select Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online. Enter the IP address (or URL) of the certification authority server.</p> <p>For a URL, you can use up to 511 of the following characters. a-zA-Z0-9'()+,./:=-?;!*#@\$_%&-</p> |
| CA Certificate | <p>This field applies when you select Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online. Select the certification authority's certificate from the CA Certificate drop-down list box.</p> <p>You must have the certification authority's certificate already imported in the Trusted Certificates screen. Click Trusted CAs to go to the Trusted Certificates screen where you can view (and manage) the Zyxel Device's list of certificates of trusted certification authorities.</p> |
| Request Authentication | <p>When you select Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online, the certification authority may want you to include a reference number and key to identify you when you send a certification request.</p> <p>Fill in both the Reference Number and the Key fields if your certification authority uses the CMP enrollment protocol. Just the Key field displays if your certification authority uses the SCEP enrollment protocol.</p> <p>For the reference number, use 0 to 999999999.</p> <p>For the key, use up to 31 of the following characters. a-zA-Z0-9; `~!@#\$\$%^&*()+_+{}':;./<>=-</p> |
| OK | Click OK to begin certificate or certification request generation. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to quit and return to the My Certificates screen. |

If you configured the **Add My Certificates** screen to have the Zyxel Device enroll a certificate and the certificate enrollment is not successful, you see a screen with a **Return** button that takes you back to the **Add My Certificates** screen. Click **Return** and check your information in the **Add My Certificates** screen. Make sure that the certification authority information is correct and that your Internet connection is working properly if you want the Zyxel Device to enroll a certificate online.

16.2.2 Edit My Certificates

Click **Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates** and then the **Edit** icon to open the **My Certificate Edit** screen. You can use this screen to view in-depth certificate information and change the certificate's name.

Figure 98 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates > Edit

Edit My Certificates [?] [X]

Configuration

Name:

Certification Path

Certificate Information

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Type: | Self-signed X.509 Certificate |
| Version: | V3 |
| Serial Number: | Signature |
| Subject: | CN=nwa5123-ac_588BF390F680 |
| Issuer: | CN=nwa5123-ac_588BF390F680 |
| Signature Algorithm: | sha1WithRSAEncryption |
| Valid From: | 2015-09-02 12:00:21 GMT |
| Valid To: | 2035-08-28 12:00:21 GMT |
| Key Algorithm: | rsaEncryption (1024 bit) |
| Subject Alternative Name: | nwa5123-ac_588BF390F680 |
| Key Usage: | Digital Signature, Key Encipherment, Data Encipherment, Certificate Sign |
| Extended Key Usage: | |
| Basic Constraint: | Subject Type=CA, Path Length Constraint=1 |
| MD5 Fingerprint: | 49:69:70:78:6D:03:44:C1:94:3C:4F:A7:07:44:E1:CE |
| SHA1 Fingerprint: | AF:AE:EC:1D:C1:86:71:80:12:52:D7:F8:A6:F7:B1:9F:7D:B2:99:DC |

Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format

```
-----BEGIN X509 CERTIFICATE-----
MIICBzCCAXCgAwIBAgIEVebk1TANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADAIMA5AwHgYDVQQDDDBdu
d2E1MTIzLWVfXzU0OEJGMzkwrjY4MDAeFw0xNTA5MDIxMjAwMjFhZjFwOzNTA4Mjg4
MjAwMjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFh
MjAwMjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFhZjFh
CSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4GNADCBiQKBgQDV5xHncqwwwvqRaYUBGIE073LSOZm0r3LVg
QexcwULTDmg7ZeNhCeL#qaxludusfulbUHSh1xLzjw0kWAXiaw7ni9RAuAuCT67
xlQVFbnIX1SPs4HLXcYdbYu2oLNyh+rxKP7pUoO5VefgwNIYhuHEzFA/QvDXWDFG
wupgKElq1wIDAQAB0owSDAObgNVHQ8BAf8EBAMCArQwlgYDVR0RBBSwGYEXbndh
NTEvMkx1bY18L0DhCRIM5MEY2ODAwEgYDVPR0TAQH/RBqwwBqEBAmIRATANBakkkkG
```

Password:

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 72 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates > Edit

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|--|
| Name | This field displays the identifying name of this certificate. You can use up to 31 alphanumeric and ;'~!@#\$\$%^&()_+[]{}',.-= characters. |
| Certification Path | <p>This field displays for a certificate, not a certification request.</p> <p>Click the Refresh button to have this read-only text box display the hierarchy of certification authorities that validate the certificate (and the certificate itself).</p> <p>If the issuing certification authority is one that you have imported as a trusted certification authority, it may be the only certification authority in the list (along with the certificate itself). If the certificate is a self-signed certificate, the certificate itself is the only one in the list. The Zyxel Device does not trust the certificate and displays "Not trusted" in this field if any certificate on the path has expired or been revoked.</p> |
| Refresh | Click Refresh to display the certification path. |
| Certificate Information | These read-only fields display detailed information about the certificate. |
| Type | This field displays general information about the certificate. CA-signed means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate. Self-signed means that the certificate's owner signed the certificate (not a certification authority). "X.509" means that this certificate was created and signed according to the ITU-T X.509 recommendation that defines the formats for public-key certificates. |
| Version | This field displays the X.509 version number. " |
| Serial Number | This field displays the certificate's identification number given by the certification authority or generated by the Zyxel Device. |
| Subject | This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), Organizational Unit (OU), Organization (O), State (ST), and Country (C). |
| Issuer | <p>This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as Common Name, Organizational Unit, Organization and Country.</p> <p>With self-signed certificates, this is the same as the Subject Name field.</p> <p>"none" displays for a certification request.</p> |
| Signature Algorithm | This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to sign the certificate. |
| Valid From | This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. "none" displays for a certification request. |
| Valid To | This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expired! message if the certificate has expired. "none" displays for a certification request. |
| Key Algorithm | This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to generate the certificate's key pair (the Zyxel Device uses RSA encryption) and the length of the key set in bits (1024 bits for example). |
| Subject Alternative Name | This field displays the certificate owner's IP address (IP), domain name (DNS) or e-mail address (EMAIL). |
| Key Usage | This field displays for what functions the certificate's key can be used. For example, "DigitalSignature" means that the key can be used to sign certificates and "KeyEncipherment" means that the key can be used to encrypt text. |
| Extended Key Usage | This field displays for what EKU (Extended Key Usage) functions the certificate's key can be used. |
| Basic Constraint | This field displays general information about the certificate. For example, Subject Type=CA means that this is a certification authority's certificate and "Path Length Constraint=1" means that there can only be one certification authority in the certificate's path. This field does not display for a certification request. |

Table 72 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates > Edit

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| MD5 Fingerprint | This is the certificate's message digest that the Zyxel Device calculated using the MD5 algorithm. |
| SHA1 Fingerprint | This is the certificate's message digest that the Zyxel Device calculated using the SHA1 algorithm. |
| Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format | <p>This read-only text box displays the certificate or certification request in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses lowercase letters, uppercase letters and numerals to convert a binary certificate into a printable form.</p> <p>You can copy and paste a certification request into a certification authority's web page, an e-mail that you send to the certification authority or a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later manual enrollment.</p> <p>You can copy and paste a certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste a certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution (via floppy disk for example).</p> |
| Export Certificate Only | Use this button to save a copy of the certificate without its private key. Click this button and then Save in the File Download screen. The Save As screen opens, browse to the location that you want to use and click Save . |
| Password | If you want to export the certificate with its private key, create a password and type it here. Make sure you keep this password in a safe place. You will need to use it if you import the certificate to another device. |
| Export Certificate with Private Key | Use this button to save a copy of the certificate with its private key. Type the certificate's password and click this button. Click Save in the File Download screen. The Save As screen opens, browse to the location that you want to use and click Save . |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. You can only change the name. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to quit and return to the My Certificates screen. |

16.2.3 Import Certificates

Click **Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates > Import** to open the **My Certificate Import** screen. Follow the instructions in this screen to save an existing certificate to the Zyxel Device.

Note: You can import a certificate that matches a corresponding certification request that was generated by the Zyxel Device. You can also import a certificate in PKCS#12 format, including the certificate's public and private keys.

The certificate you import replaces the corresponding request in the **My Certificates** screen.

You must remove any spaces in the certificate's filename before you can import it.

Figure 99 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates > Import

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

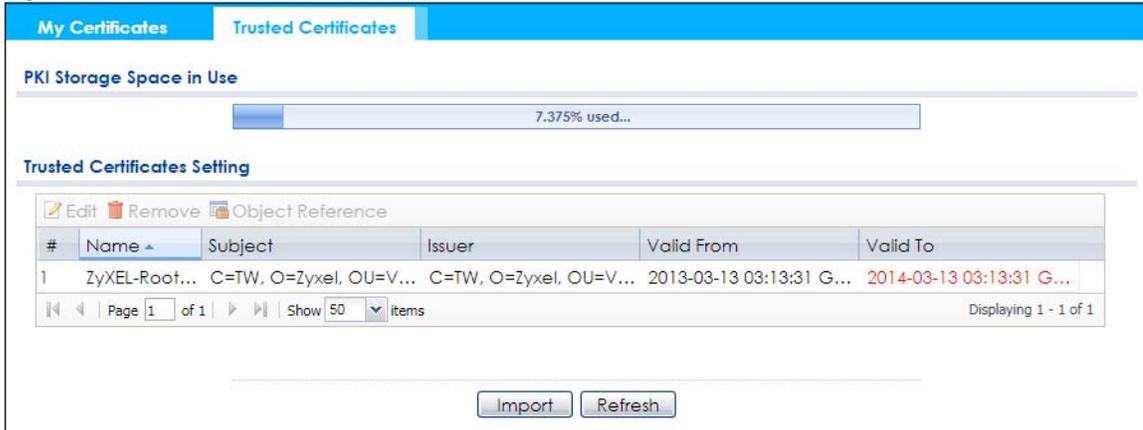
Table 73 Configuration > Object > Certificate > My Certificates > Import

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|--|
| File Path | Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse to find it. You cannot import a certificate with the same name as a certificate that is already in the Zyxel Device. |
| Browse | Click Browse to find the certificate file you want to upload. |
| Password | This field only applies when you import a binary PKCS#12 format file. Type the file's password that was created when the PKCS #12 file was exported. |
| OK | Click OK to save the certificate on the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to quit and return to the My Certificates screen. |

16.3 Trusted Certificates

Click **Configuration > Object > Certificate > Trusted Certificates** to open the **Trusted Certificates** screen. This screen displays a summary list of certificates that you have set the Zyxel Device to accept as trusted. The Zyxel Device also accepts any valid certificate signed by a certificate on this list as being trustworthy; thus you do not need to import any certificate that is signed by one of these certificates.

Figure 100 Configuration > Object > Certificate > Trusted Certificates



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 74 Configuration > Object > Certificate > Trusted Certificates

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| PKI Storage Space in Use | This bar displays the percentage of the Zyxel Device's PKI storage space that is currently in use. When the storage space is almost full, you should consider deleting expired or unnecessary certificates before adding more certificates. |
| Edit | Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to open a screen with an in-depth list of information about the certificate. |
| Remove | The Zyxel Device keeps all of your certificates unless you specifically delete them. Uploading a new firmware or default configuration file does not delete your certificates. To remove an entry, select it and click Remove . The Zyxel Device confirms you want to remove it before doing so. Subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action. |
| Object Reference | You cannot delete certificates that any of the Zyxel Device's features are configured to use. Select an entry and click Object Reference to open a screen that shows which settings use the entry. |
| # | This field displays the certificate index number. The certificates are listed in alphabetical order. |
| Name | This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. |
| Subject | This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information. |
| Issuer | This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the Subject field. |
| Valid From | This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. |
| Valid To | This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expired! message if the certificate has expired. |
| Import | Click Import to open a screen where you can save the certificate of a certification authority that you trust, from your computer to the Zyxel Device. |
| Refresh | Click this button to display the current validity status of the certificates. |

16.3.1 Edit Trusted Certificates

Click **Configuration > Object > Certificate > Trusted Certificates** and then a certificate's **Edit** icon to open the **Trusted Certificates Edit** screen. Use this screen to view in-depth information about the certificate, change the certificate's name and set whether or not you want the Zyxel Device to check a

certification authority's list of revoked certificates before trusting a certificate issued by the certification authority.

Figure 101 Configuration > Object > Certificate > Trusted Certificates > Edit

Edit Trusted Certificates

Configuration

Name:

Certification Path

Certificate Validation

Enable X.509v3 CRL Distribution Points and OCSP checking

OCSP Server

URL:

ID:

Password:

LDAP Server

Address: Port:

ID:

Password:

Certificate Information

Type: Self-signed X.509 Certificate

Version: V3

Serial Number: 59:72:93:d0:34:4b:11:f5:ed:33:3c:3d:bf:87:01:da

Subject: C=TW, O=Zyxel, OU=VPN Department, OU=RootCA

Issuer: C=TW, O=Zyxel, OU=VPN Department, OU=RootCA

Signature Algorithm: sha1WithRSAEncryption

Valid From: 2013-03-13 03:13:31 GMT

Valid To: 2014-03-13 03:13:31 GMT

Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption (2048 bit)

Subject Alternative Name:

Key Usage:

Extended Key Usage:

Basic Constraint: Subject Type=CA, Path Length Constraint=-1

MD5 Fingerprint: 16:43:D8:57:C5:CD:26:D0:FD:EC:33:ED:7E:7D:85:E9

SHA1 Fingerprint: CC:1E:DB:F8:07:48:B4:07:04:23:33:21:6D:39:45:BC:61:39:A0:C8

Certificate

```
-----BEGIN X509 CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDRzCCAi+gAwIBAgIQWXXKT0DRLEfXtMzw9v4cB2jANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADBH
MQswCQYDVQQGEwJUVzEOMAwGA1UECgwFWWnl4ZWwxFzAVBgNlVAsMDIZQTIBEXBh
cnRtZW50MQ8wDQYDVQQQLDAZSb290Q0EwHhcNMMDMwMzEzMDMxMzVhcnNMDQw
MzEz
MDMxMzEzMDMxMzVhcnRtZW50MQ8wDQYDVQQQLDAZSb290Q0EwggEIMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEB
AQIIA4A1BDMwAwgAEKAAoR&ODAnmeIA3HvHlGOr9A/hA7NwvTRvuO8kaTf1E/gd0z
```

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 75 Configuration > Object > Certificate > Trusted Certificates > Edit

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| Name | This field displays the identifying name of this certificate. You can change the name. You can use up to 31 alphanumeric and ;'~!@#%&()_+[]{}',.- characters. |
| Certification Path | Click the Refresh button to have this read-only text box display the end entity's certificate and a list of certification authority certificates that shows the hierarchy of certification authorities that validate the end entity's certificate. If the issuing certification authority is one that you have imported as a trusted certificate, it may be the only certification authority in the list (along with the end entity's own certificate). The Zyxel Device does not trust the end entity's certificate and displays "Not trusted" in this field if any certificate on the path has expired or been revoked. |
| Refresh | Click Refresh to display the certification path. |
| Enable X.509v3 CRL Distribution Points and OCSP checking | Select this check box to have the Zyxel Device check incoming certificates that are signed by this certificate against a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) or an OCSP server. You also need to configure the OCSP or LDAP server details. |
| OCSP Server | Select this check box if the directory server uses OCSP (Online Certificate Status Protocol). |
| URL | Type the protocol, IP address and pathname of the OCSP server. |
| ID | The Zyxel Device may need to authenticate itself in order to assess the OCSP server. Type the login name (up to 31 ASCII characters) from the entity maintaining the server (usually a certification authority). |
| Password | Type the password (up to 31 ASCII characters) from the entity maintaining the OCSP server (usually a certification authority). |
| LDAP Server | Select this check box if the directory server uses LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol). LDAP is a protocol over TCP that specifies how clients access directories of certificates and lists of revoked certificates. |
| Address | Type the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) of the directory server. |
| Port | Use this field to specify the LDAP server port number. You must use the same server port number that the directory server uses. 389 is the default server port number for LDAP. |
| ID | The Zyxel Device may need to authenticate itself in order to assess the CRL directory server. Type the login name (up to 31 ASCII characters) from the entity maintaining the server (usually a certification authority). |
| Password | Type the password (up to 31 ASCII characters) from the entity maintaining the CRL directory server (usually a certification authority). |
| Certificate Information | These read-only fields display detailed information about the certificate. |
| Type | This field displays general information about the certificate. CA-signed means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate. Self-signed means that the certificate's owner signed the certificate (not a certification authority). X.509 means that this certificate was created and signed according to the ITU-T X.509 recommendation that defines the formats for public-key certificates. |
| Version | This field displays the X.509 version number. |
| Serial Number | This field displays the certificate's identification number given by the certification authority. |
| Subject | This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), Organizational Unit (OU), Organization (O) and Country (C). |
| Issuer | This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as Common Name, Organizational Unit, Organization and Country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the Subject Name field. |
| Signature Algorithm | This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to sign the certificate. Some certification authorities use rsa-pkcs1-sha1 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the SHA1 hash algorithm). Other certification authorities may use rsa-pkcs1-md5 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the MD5 hash algorithm). |

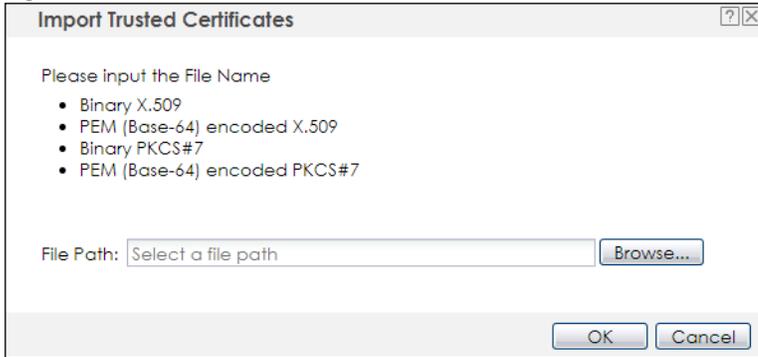
Table 75 Configuration > Object > Certificate > Trusted Certificates > Edit (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|--|
| Valid From | This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable. |
| Valid To | This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired. |
| Key Algorithm | This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to generate the certificate's key pair (the Zyxel Device uses RSA encryption) and the length of the key set in bits (1024 bits for example). |
| Subject Alternative Name | This field displays the certificate's owner's IP address (IP), domain name (DNS) or e-mail address (EMAIL). |
| Key Usage | This field displays for what functions the certificate's key can be used. For example, "DigitalSignature" means that the key can be used to sign certificates and "KeyEncipherment" means that the key can be used to encrypt text. |
| Basic Constraint | This field displays general information about the certificate. For example, Subject Type=CA means that this is a certification authority's certificate and "Path Length Constraint=1" means that there can only be one certification authority in the certificate's path. |
| MD5 Fingerprint | This is the certificate's message digest that the Zyxel Device calculated using the MD5 algorithm. You can use this value to verify with the certification authority (over the phone for example) that this is actually their certificate. |
| SHA1 Fingerprint | This is the certificate's message digest that the Zyxel Device calculated using the SHA1 algorithm. You can use this value to verify with the certification authority (over the phone for example) that this is actually their certificate. |
| Certificate | This read-only text box displays the certificate or certification request in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses lowercase letters, uppercase letters and numerals to convert a binary certificate into a printable form. You can copy and paste the certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste the certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution (via floppy disk for example). |
| Export Certificate | Click this button and then Save in the File Download screen. The Save As screen opens, browse to the location that you want to use and click Save . |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. You can only change the name. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to quit and return to the Trusted Certificates screen. |

16.3.2 Import Trusted Certificates

Click **Configuration > Object > Certificate > Trusted Certificates > Import** to open the **Import Trusted Certificates** screen. Follow the instructions in this screen to save a trusted certificate to the Zyxel Device.

Note: You must remove any spaces from the certificate's filename before you can import the certificate.

Figure 102 Configuration > Object > Certificate > Trusted Certificates > Import

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 76 Configuration > Object > Certificate > Trusted Certificates > Import

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|--|
| File Path | Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse to find it. You cannot import a certificate with the same name as a certificate that is already in the Zyxel Device. |
| Browse | Click Browse to find the certificate file you want to upload. |
| OK | Click OK to save the certificate on the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to quit and return to the previous screen. |

16.4 Technical Reference

The following section contains additional technical information about the features described in this chapter.

OCSP

OCSP (Online Certificate Status Protocol) allows an application or device to check whether a certificate is valid. With OCSP the Zyxel Device checks the status of individual certificates instead of downloading a Certificate Revocation List (CRL). OCSP has two main advantages over a CRL. The first is real-time status information. The second is a reduction in network traffic since the Zyxel Device only gets information on the certificates that it needs to verify, not a huge list. When the Zyxel Device requests certificate status information, the OCSP server returns a "expired", "current" or "unknown" response.

CHAPTER 17

System

17.1 Overview

Use the system screens to configure general Zyxel Device settings.

17.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **Host Name** screen ([Section 17.2 on page 173](#)) configures a unique name for the Zyxel Device in your network.
- [The Power Mode screen \(Section 17.3 on page 174\) configures the Zyxel Device's power settings.](#)
- The **Date/Time** screen ([Section 17.4 on page 175](#)) configures the date and time for the Zyxel Device.
- The **WWW** screens ([Section 17.5 on page 178](#)) configure settings for HTTP or HTTPS access to the Zyxel Device.
- The **SSH** screen ([Section 17.6 on page 186](#)) configures SSH (Secure SHell) for securely accessing the Zyxel Device's command line interface.
- The **Telnet** screen ([Section 17.7 on page 190](#)) configures Telnet for accessing the Zyxel Device's command line interface.
- The **FTP** screen ([Section 17.8 on page 191](#)) specifies FTP server settings. You can upload and download the Zyxel Device's firmware and configuration files using FTP. Please also see [Chapter 19 on page 208](#) for more information about firmware and configuration files.
- The **SNMP** screens ([Section 17.9 on page 192](#)) configure the Zyxel Device's SNMP settings, including profiles that define allowed SNMPv3 access.

17.2 Host Name

A host name is the unique name by which a device is known on a network. Click **Configuration > System > Host Name** to open this screen.

Figure 103 Configuration > System > Host Name

Host Name

General Settings

System Name: (Optional)

System Location: (Optional)

Domain Name: (Optional)

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 77 Configuration > System > Host Name

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|--|
| System Name | Choose a descriptive name to identify your Zyxel Device device. This name can be up to 64 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes (-) underscores (_) and periods (.) are accepted. |
| System Location | Specify the name of the place where the Zyxel Device is located. You can enter up to 60 alphanumeric and '()' ;:;! +*/= #\$\$%@ characters. Spaces and underscores are allowed. The name should start with a letter. |
| Domain Name | Enter the domain name (if you know it) here. This name is propagated to DHCP clients connected to interfaces with the DHCP server enabled. This name can be up to 254 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" are accepted. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

17.3 Power Mode

Use this screen to configure the Zyxel Device's power settings. Click **Configuration > System > Power Mode** to open this screen.

Figure 104 Configuration > System > Power Mode

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 78 Configuration > System > Power Mode

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Force override the power mode to full power | Select this check box if you are using a PoE injector that does not support PoE negotiation. Otherwise, the Zyxel Device cannot draw full power from the power sourcing equipment. Enable this power mode to improve the Zyxel Device's performance in this situation. Note: Ensure that the power sourcing equipment can supply enough power to the AP to avoid abnormal system reboots. Note: Only enable this if you are using a passive PoE injector that is not IEEE 802.3at/bt compliant but can still provide full power. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

17.4 Date and Time

For effective scheduling and logging, the Zyxel Device system time must be accurate. The Zyxel Device has a software mechanism to set the time manually or get the current time and date from an external server.

To change your Zyxel Device's time based on your local time zone and date, click **Configuration > System > Date/Time**. The screen displays as shown. You can manually set the Zyxel Device's time and date or have the Zyxel Device get the date and time from a time server.

Figure 105 Configuration > System > Date/Time

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 79 Configuration > System > Date/Time

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|---|
| Current Time and Date | |
| Current Time | This field displays the present time of your Zyxel Device. |
| Current Date | This field displays the present date of your Zyxel Device. |
| Time and Date Setup | |
| Manual | Select this radio button to enter the time and date manually. If you configure a new time and date, time zone and daylight saving at the same time, the time zone and daylight saving will affect the new time and date you entered. When you enter the time settings manually, the Zyxel Device uses the new setting once you click Apply . |
| New Time (hh:mm:ss) | This field displays the last updated time from the time server or the last time configured manually. When you set Time and Date Setup to Manual , enter the new time in this field and then click Apply . |

Table 79 Configuration > System > Date/Time (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|--|
| New Date (yyyy-mm-dd) | This field displays the last updated date from the time server or the last date configured manually. When you set Time and Date Setup to Manual , enter the new date in this field and then click Apply . |
| Get from Time Server | Select this radio button to have the Zyxel Device get the time and date from the time server you specify below. The Zyxel Device requests time and date settings from the time server under the following circumstances. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the Zyxel Device starts up. • When you click Apply or Sync. Now in this screen. • 24-hour intervals after starting up. |
| Time Server Address | Enter the IP address or URL of your time server. Check with your ISP/network administrator if you are unsure of this information. |
| Sync. Now | Click this button to have the Zyxel Device get the time and date from a time server (see the Time Server Address field). This also saves your changes (except the daylight saving settings). |
| Time Zone Setup | |
| Time Zone | Choose the time zone of your location. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). |
| Enable Daylight Saving | Daylight saving is a period from late spring to fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening. Select this option if you use Daylight Saving Time. |
| Start Date | Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected Enable Daylight Saving . The at field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select Second, Sunday, March and type 2 in the at field. Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Last, Sunday, March . The time you type in the at field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 2 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1). |
| End Date | Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected Enable Daylight Saving . The at field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select First, Sunday, November and type 2 in the at field. Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Last, Sunday, October . The time you type in the at field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 2 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1). |
| Offset | Specify how much the clock changes when daylight saving begins and ends. Enter a number from 1 to 5.5 (by 0.5 increments). For example, if you set this field to 3.5, a log occurred at 6 P.M. in local official time will appear as if it had occurred at 10:30 P.M. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

17.4.1 Pre-defined NTP Time Servers List

When you turn on the Zyxel Device for the first time, the date and time start at 2003-01-01 00:00:00. The Zyxel Device then attempts to synchronize with one of the following pre-defined list of Network Time Protocol (NTP) time servers.

The Zyxel Device continues to use the following pre-defined list of NTP time servers if you do not specify a time server or it cannot synchronize with the time server you specified.

Table 80 Default Time Servers

| |
|----------------|
| 0.pool.ntp.org |
| 1.pool.ntp.org |
| 2.pool.ntp.org |

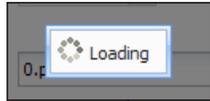
When the Zyxel Device uses the pre-defined list of NTP time servers, it randomly selects one server and tries to synchronize with it. If the synchronization fails, then the Zyxel Device goes through the rest of the list in order from the first one tried until either it is successful or all the pre-defined NTP time servers have been tried.

17.4.2 Time Server Synchronization

Click the **Sync. Now** button to get the time and date from the time server you specified in the **Time Server Address** field.

When the **Loading** message appears, you may have to wait up to one minute.

Figure 106 Loading



The **Current Time** and **Current Date** fields will display the appropriate settings if the synchronization is successful.

If the synchronization was not successful, a log displays in the **View Log** screen. Try re-configuring the **Date/Time** screen.

To manually set the Zyxel Device date and time:

- 1 Click **System > Date/Time**.
- 2 Select **Manual** under **Time and Date Setup**.
- 3 Enter the Zyxel Device's time in the **New Time** field.
- 4 Enter the Zyxel Device's date in the **New Date** field.
- 5 Under **Time Zone Setup**, select your **Time Zone** from the list.
- 6 As an option you can select the **Enable Daylight Saving** check box to adjust the Zyxel Device clock for daylight savings.
- 7 Click **Apply**.

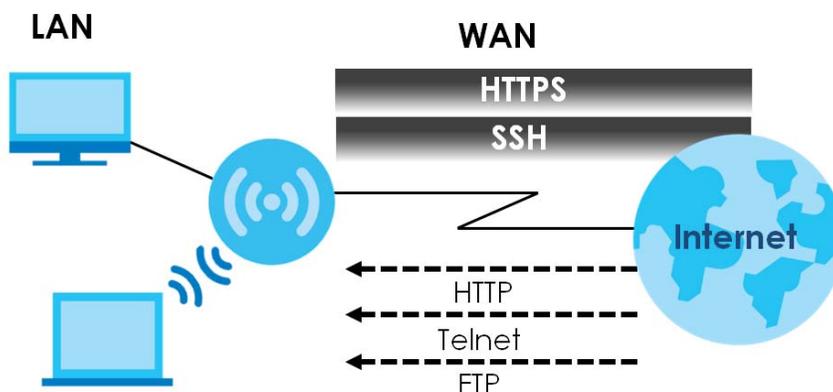
To get the Zyxel Device date and time from a time server:

- 1 Click **System > Date/Time**.
- 2 Select **Get from Time Server** under **Time and Date Setup**.
- 3 Under **Time Zone Setup**, select your **Time Zone** from the list.
- 4 Under **Time and Date Setup**, enter a **Time Server Address**.
- 5 Click **Apply**.

17.5 WWW Overview

The following figure shows secure and insecure management of the Zyxel Device coming in from the WAN. HTTPS and SSH access are secure. HTTP, Telnet, and FTP management access are not secure.

Figure 107 Secure and Insecure Service Access From the WAN



17.5.1 Service Access Limitations

A service cannot be used to access the Zyxel Device when you have disabled that service in the corresponding screen.

17.5.2 System Timeout

There is a lease timeout for administrators. The Zyxel Device automatically logs you out if the management session remains idle for longer than this timeout period. The management session does not time out when a statistics screen is polling.

Each user is also forced to log in the Zyxel Device for authentication again when the reauthentication time expires.

You can change the timeout settings in the **User** screens.

17.5.3 HTTPS

You can set the Zyxel Device to use HTTP or HTTPS (HTTPS adds security) for Web Configurator sessions.

HTTPS (HyperText Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer, or HTTP over SSL) is a web protocol that encrypts and decrypts web pages. Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data by ensuring confidentiality (an unauthorized party cannot read the transferred data), authentication (one party can identify the other party) and data integrity (you know if data has been changed).

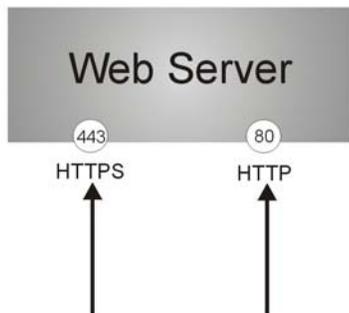
It relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys (see [Chapter 16 on page 156](#) for more information).

HTTPS on the Zyxel Device is used so that you can securely access the Zyxel Device using the Web Configurator. The SSL protocol specifies that the HTTPS server (the Zyxel Device) must always authenticate itself to the HTTPS client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the Zyxel Device), whereas the HTTPS client only should authenticate itself when the HTTPS server requires it to do so (select **Authenticate Client Certificates** in the **WWW** screen). **Authenticate Client Certificates** is optional and if selected means the HTTPS client must send the Zyxel Device a certificate. You must apply for a certificate for the browser from a CA that is a trusted CA on the Zyxel Device.

Please refer to the following figure.

- 1 HTTPS connection requests from an SSL-aware web browser go to port 443 (by default) on the Zyxel Device's web server.
- 2 HTTP connection requests from a web browser go to port 80 (by default) on the Zyxel Device's web server.

Figure 108 HTTP/HTTPS Implementation



Note: If you disable **HTTP** in the **WWW** screen, then the Zyxel Device blocks all HTTP connection attempts.

17.5.4 Configuring WWW Service Control

Click **Configuration** > **System** > **WWW** to open the **WWW** screen. Use this screen to specify HTTP or HTTPS settings.

Figure 109 Configuration > System > WWW > Service Control

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 81 Configuration > System > WWW > Service Control

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|---|
| HTTPS | |
| Enable | Select the check box to allow or disallow the computer with the IP address that matches the IP address(es) in the Service Control table to access the Zyxel Device Web Configurator using secure HTTPs connections. |
| Server Port | The HTTPS server listens on port 443 by default. If you change the HTTPS server port to a different number on the Zyxel Device, for example 8443, then you must notify people who need to access the Zyxel Device Web Configurator to use "https://Zyxel Device IP Address:8443" as the URL. |
| Authenticate Client Certificates | Select Authenticate Client Certificates (optional) to require the SSL client to authenticate itself to the Zyxel Device by sending the Zyxel Device a certificate. To do that the SSL client must have a CA-signed certificate from a CA that has been imported as a trusted CA on the Zyxel Device. |
| Server Certificate | Select a certificate the HTTPS server (the Zyxel Device) uses to authenticate itself to the HTTPS client. You must have certificates already configured in the My Certificates screen. |
| Redirect HTTP to HTTPS | To allow only secure Web Configurator access, select this to redirect all HTTP connection requests to the HTTPS server. |
| HTTP | |
| Enable | Select the check box to allow or disallow the computer with the IP address that matches the IP address(es) in the Service Control table to access the Zyxel Device Web Configurator using HTTP connections. |
| Server Port | You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service to access the Zyxel Device. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

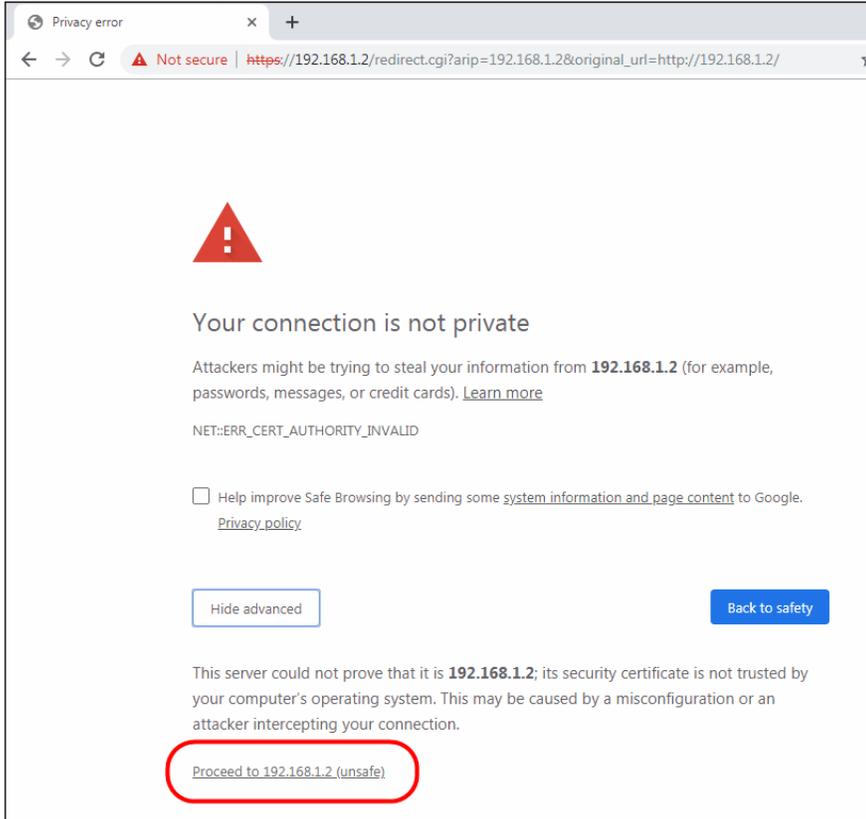
17.5.5 HTTPS Example

If you haven't changed the default HTTPS port on the Zyxel Device, then in your browser enter "https://Zyxel Device IP Address/" as the web site address where "Zyxel Device IP Address" is the IP address or domain name of the Zyxel Device you wish to access.

17.5.5.1 Google Chrome Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the Zyxel Device HTTPS server, you will see the error message shown in the following screen.

Figure 110 Security Alert Dialog Box (Google Chrome)

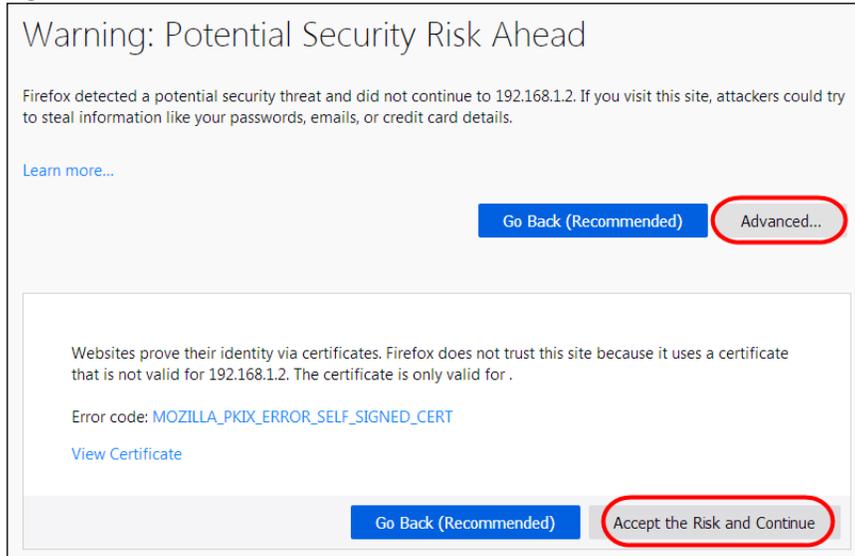


Select **Advanced** > **Proceed to 192.168.1.2 (unsafe)** to proceed to the Web Configurator login screen.

17.5.5.2 Mozilla Firefox Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the Zyxel Device HTTPS server, a Warning screen appears as shown in the following screen. Click **Learn More...** if you want to verify more information about the certificate from the Zyxel Device.

Click **Advanced** > **Accept the Risk and Continue**.

Figure 111 Security Certificate 1 (Firefox)

17.5.5.3 Avoiding Browser Warning Messages

Here are the main reasons your browser displays warnings about the Zyxel Device's HTTPS server certificate and what you can do to avoid seeing the warnings:

- The issuing certificate authority of the Zyxel Device's HTTPS server certificate is not one of the browser's trusted certificate authorities. The issuing certificate authority of the Zyxel Device's factory default certificate is the Zyxel Device itself since the certificate is a self-signed certificate.
- For the browser to trust a self-signed certificate, import the self-signed certificate into your operating system as a trusted certificate.
- To have the browser trust the certificates issued by a certificate authority, import the certificate authority's certificate into your operating system as a trusted certificate. Refer to [Appendix A on page 245](#) for details.

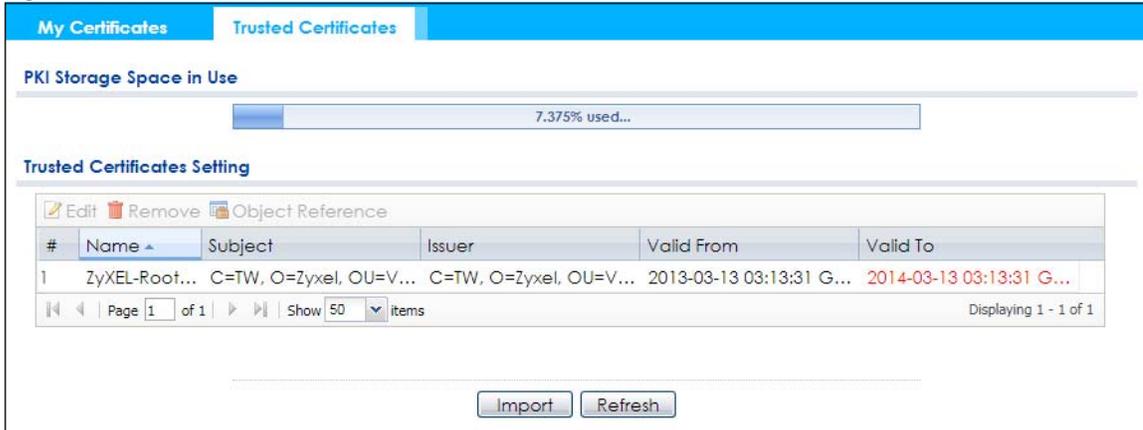
17.5.5.4 Enrolling and Importing SSL Client Certificates

The SSL client needs a certificate if **Authenticate Client Certificates** is selected on the Zyxel Device.

You must have imported at least one trusted CA to the Zyxel Device in order for the **Authenticate Client Certificates** to be active (see the Certificates chapter for details).

Apply for a certificate from a Certification Authority (CA) that is trusted by the Zyxel Device (see the Zyxel Device's **Trusted Certificates** Web Configurator screen).

Figure 112 Trusted Certificates



The CA sends you a package containing the CA's trusted certificate(s), your personal certificate(s) and a password to install the personal certificate(s).

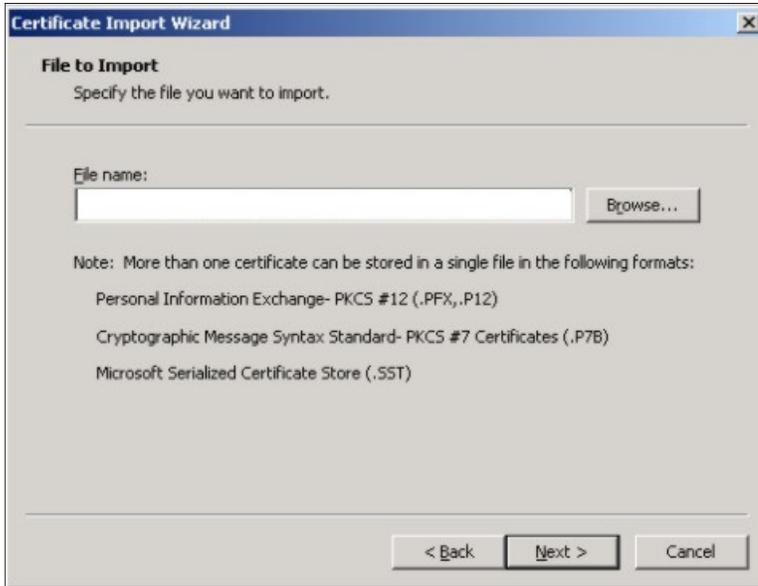
17.5.5.5 Installing a Personal Certificate

You need a password in advance. The CA may issue the password or you may have to specify it during the enrollment. Double-click the personal certificate given to you by the CA to produce a screen similar to the one shown next.

- 1 Click **Next** to begin the wizard.



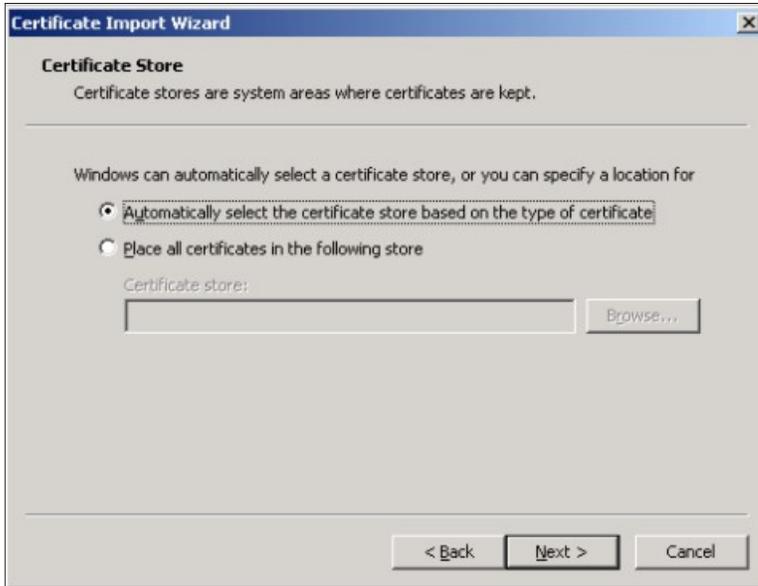
- 2 The file name and path of the certificate you double-clicked should automatically appear in the **File name** text box. Click **Browse** if you wish to import a different certificate.



- 3 Enter the password given to you by the CA.



- 4 Have the wizard determine where the certificate should be saved on your computer or select **Place all certificates in the following store** and choose a different location.



- 5 Click **Finish** to complete the wizard and begin the import process.



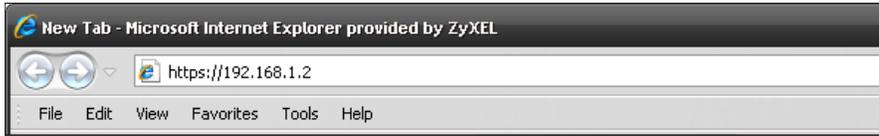
- 6 You should see the following screen when the certificate is correctly installed on your computer.



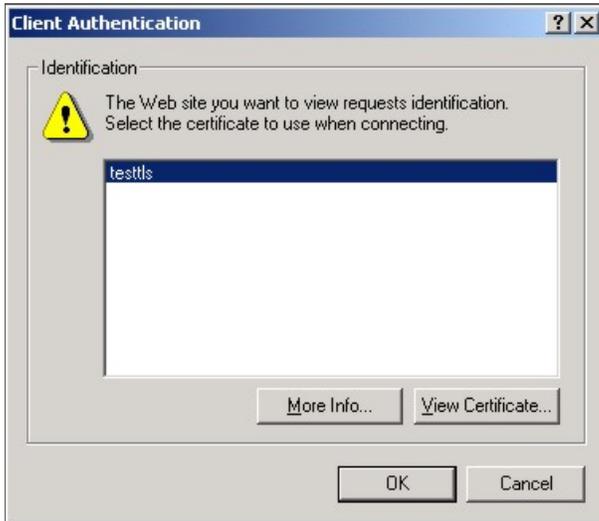
17.5.5.6 Using a Certificate When Accessing the Zyxel Device

To access the Zyxel Device via HTTPS:

- 1 Enter 'https://Zyxel Device IP Address/' in your browser's web address field.



- 2 When **Authenticate Client Certificates** is selected on the Zyxel Device, the following screen asks you to select a personal certificate to send to the Zyxel Device. This screen displays even if you only have a single certificate as in the example.



- 3 You next see the Web Configurator login screen.

17.6 SSH

You can use SSH (Secure SHell) to securely access the Zyxel Device's command line interface.

SSH is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network. In the following figure, computer B on the Internet uses SSH to securely connect to the Zyxel Device (A) for a management session.

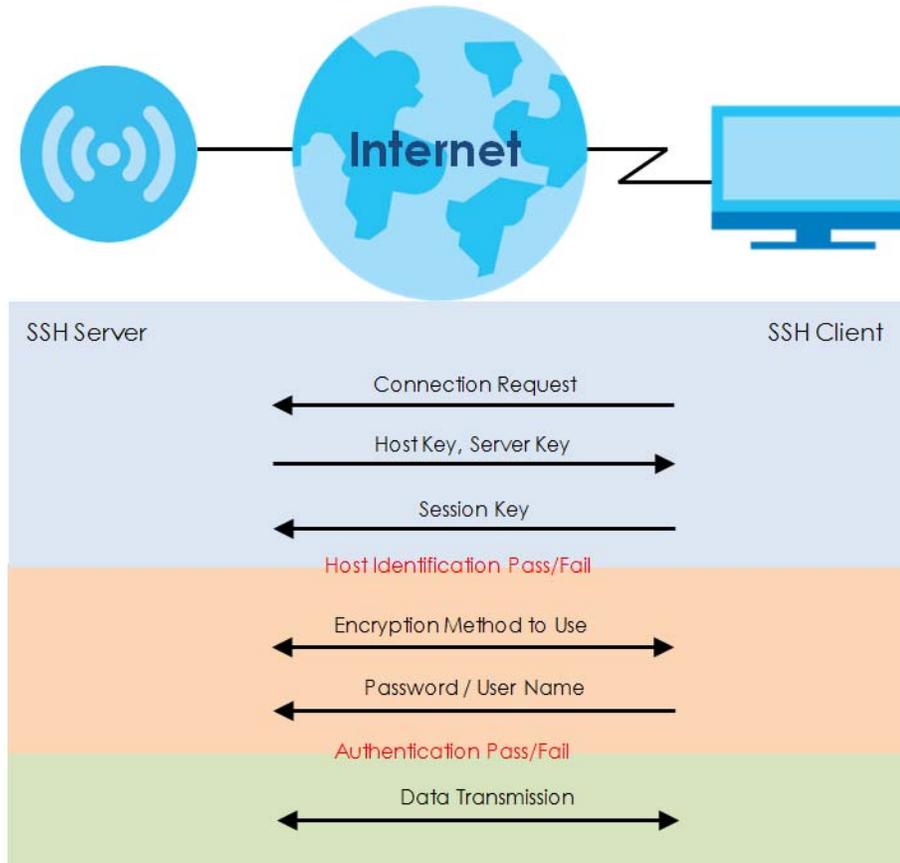
Figure 113 SSH Communication Over the WAN Example



17.6.1 How SSH Works

The following figure is an example of how a secure connection is established between two remote hosts using SSH v1.

Figure 114 How SSH v1 Works Example



1 Host Identification

The SSH client sends a connection request to the SSH server. The server identifies itself with a host key. The client encrypts a randomly generated session key with the host key and server key and sends the result back to the server.

The client automatically saves any new server public keys. In subsequent connections, the server public key is checked against the saved version on the client computer.

2 Encryption Method

Once the identification is verified, both the client and server must agree on the type of encryption method to use.

3 Authentication and Data Transmission

After the identification is verified and data encryption activated, a secure tunnel is established between the client and the server. The client then sends its authentication information (user name and password) to the server to log in to the server.

17.6.2 SSH Implementation on the Zyxel Device

Your Zyxel Device supports SSH versions 1 and 2 using RSA authentication and four encryption methods (AES, 3DES, Archfour, and Blowfish). The SSH server is implemented on the Zyxel Device for management using port 22 (by default).

17.6.3 Requirements for Using SSH

You must install an SSH client program on a client computer (Windows or Linux operating system) that is used to connect to the Zyxel Device over SSH.

17.6.4 Configuring SSH

Click **Configuration > System > SSH** to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure your Zyxel Device's Secure Shell settings.

Note: It is recommended that you disable Telnet and FTP when you configure SSH for secure connections.

Figure 115 Configuration > System > SSH

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 82 Configuration > System > SSH

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|---|
| Enable | Select the check box to allow or disallow the computer with the IP address that matches the IP address(es) in the Service Control table to access the Zyxel Device CLI using this service. Note: The Zyxel Device uses only SSH version 2 protocol. |
| <u>Version 1</u> | <u>Select the check box to have the Zyxel Device use both SSH version 1 and version 2 protocols. If you clear the check box, the Zyxel Device uses only SSH version 2 protocol.</u> |
| Server Port | You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management. |
| Server Certificate | Select the certificate whose corresponding private key is to be used to identify the Zyxel Device for SSH connections. You must have certificates already configured in the My Certificates screen. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

17.6.5 Examples of Secure Telnet Using SSH

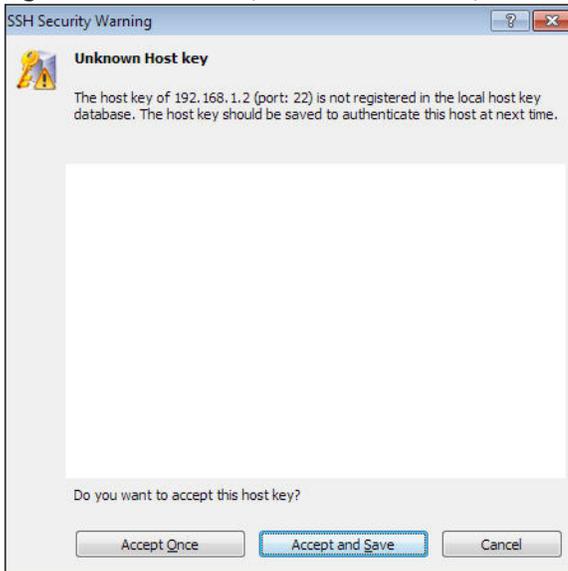
This section shows two examples using a command interface and a graphical interface SSH client program to remotely access the Zyxel Device. The configuration and connection steps are similar for most SSH client programs. Refer to your SSH client program user's guide.

17.6.5.1 Example 1: Microsoft Windows

This section describes how to access the Zyxel Device using the Secure Shell Client program.

- 1 Launch the SSH client and specify the connection information (IP address, port number) for the Zyxel Device.
- 2 Configure the SSH client to accept connection using SSH version 2.
- 3 A window displays prompting you to store the host key in you computer. Click **Yes** to continue.

Figure 116 SSH Example 1: Store Host Key



Enter the password to log in to the Zyxel Device. The CLI screen displays next.

17.6.5.2 Example 2: Linux

This section describes how to access the Zyxel Device using the OpenSSH client program that comes with most Linux distributions.

- 1 Test whether the SSH service is available on the Zyxel Device.
 - Enter "`telnet 192.168.1.2 22`" at a terminal prompt and press [ENTER]. The computer attempts to connect to port 22 on the Zyxel Device (using the default IP address of 192.168.1.2).
 - A message displays indicating the SSH protocol version supported by the Zyxel Device.

Figure 117 SSH Example 2: Test

```
$ telnet 192.168.1.2 22
Trying 192.168.1.2...
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
Escape character is '^]'.
SSH-1.5-1.0.0
```

- 2 Enter "ssh -2 192.168.1.2". This command forces your computer to connect to the Zyxel Device using SSH version 1. If this is the first time you are connecting to the Zyxel Device using SSH, a message displays prompting you to save the host information of the Zyxel Device. Type "yes" and press [ENTER].

Then enter the password to log in to the Zyxel Device.

Figure 118 SSH Example 2: Log in

```
$ ssh -2 192.168.1.2
The authenticity of host '192.168.1.2 (192.168.1.2)' can't be established.
RSA1 key fingerprint is 21:6c:07:25:7e:f4:75:80:ec:af:bd:d4:3d:80:53:d1.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
Warning: Permanently added '192.168.1.2' (RSA1) to the list of known hosts.
Administrator@192.168.1.2's password:
```

- 3 The CLI screen displays next.

17.7 Telnet

You can use Telnet to access the Zyxel Device's command line interface. Click **Configuration > System > TELNET** to configure your Zyxel Device for remote Telnet access. Use this screen to enable or disable Telnet and set the server port number.

Figure 119 Configuration > System > TELNET

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 83 Configuration > System > TELNET

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|---|
| Enable | Select the check box to allow or disallow the computer with the IP address that matches the IP address(es) in the Service Control table to access the Zyxel Device CLI using this service. |
| Server Port | You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management. |

Table 83 Configuration > System > TELNET (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|---|
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

17.8 FTP

You can upload and download the Zyxel Device's firmware and configuration files using FTP. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client. See [Chapter 19 on page 208](#) for more information about firmware and configuration files.

To change your Zyxel Device's FTP settings, click **Configuration > System > FTP** tab. The screen appears as shown. Use this screen to specify FTP settings.

Figure 120 Configuration > System > FTP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

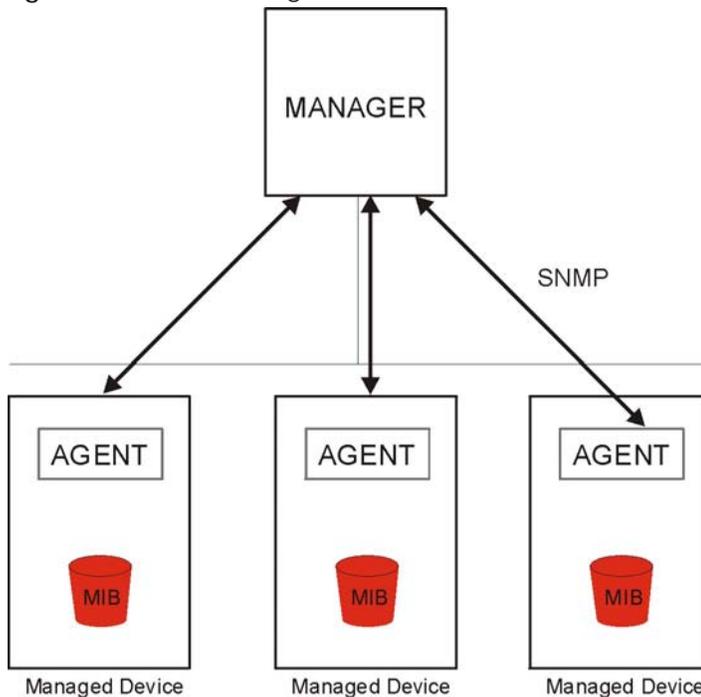
Table 84 Configuration > System > FTP

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|--|
| Enable | Select the check box to allow or disallow the computer with the IP address that matches the IP address(es) in the Service Control table to access the Zyxel Device using this service. |
| TLS required | Select the check box to use FTP over TLS (Transport Layer Security) to encrypt communication. This implements TLS as a security mechanism to secure FTP clients and/or servers. |
| Server Port | You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management. |
| Server Certificate | Select the certificate whose corresponding private key is to be used to identify the Zyxel Device for FTP connections. You must have certificates already configured in the My Certificates screen. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

17.9 SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. Your Zyxel Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the Zyxel Device through the network. The Zyxel Device supports SNMP version one (SNMPv1), version two (SNMPv2c), and version three (SNMPv3). The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation.

Figure 121 SNMP Management Model



An SNMP managed network consists of two main types of component: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed device (the Zyxel Device). An agent translates the local management information from the managed device into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a device. Examples of variables include such as number of packets received, node port status etc. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

- Get - Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
- GetNext - Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
- Set - Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.

- Trap - Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

17.9.1 Supported MIBs

The Zyxel Device supports MIB II that is defined in RFC-1213 and RFC-1215. The Zyxel Device also supports private MIBs (ZYXEL-ES-CAPWAP.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-COMMON.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-ZyXELAPMgmt.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-PROWLAN.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-RFMGMT.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-SMI.MIB, and ZYXEL-ES-WIRELESS.MIB) to collect information about CPU and memory usage and VPN total throughput. The focus of the MIBs is to let administrators collect statistical data and monitor status and performance. You can download the Zyxel Device's MIBs from www.zyxel.com.

17.9.2 SNMP Traps

The Zyxel Device will send traps to the SNMP manager when any one of the following events occurs.

Table 85 SNMP Traps

| OBJECT LABEL | OBJECT ID | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--|
| linkDown | 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3 | This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down. |
| linkUp | 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4 | This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up. |
| authenticationFailure | 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5 | This trap is sent when an SNMP request comes from non-authenticated hosts. |

17.9.3 Configuring SNMP

To change your Zyxel Device's SNMP settings, click **Configuration > System > SNMP** tab. The screen appears as shown. Use this screen to configure your SNMP settings. You can also configure user profiles that define allowed SNMPv3 access.

Figure 122 Configuration > System > SNMP

SNMP

General Settings

Enable

Server Port:

Trap:

Community: (Optional)

Destination: (Optional)

Trap Wireless Event

SNMPv2c

Get Community:

Set Community:

SNMPv3

| # | User Name | Authentication | Privacy | Privilege |
|--------------------|-----------|----------------|---------|-----------|
| No data to display | | | | |

Page 1 of 1 | Show 50 items

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 86 Configuration > System > SNMP

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------|---|
| Enable | Select the check box to allow or disallow users to access the Zyxel Device using SNMP. |
| Server Port | You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management. |
| Trap | |
| Community | Type the trap community, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager. The default is public and allows all requests. |
| Destination | Type the IP address of the station to send your SNMP traps to. |
| Trap Wireless Event | Select this to have the Zyxel Device send a trap to the SNMP manager when a wireless client is connected to or disconnected from the Zyxel Device. |
| SNMPv2c | Select this to allow SNMP managers using SNMPv2c to access the Zyxel Device. |
| Get Community | Enter the Get Community , which is the password for the incoming Get and GetNext requests from the management station. The default is public and allows all requests. |
| Set Community | Enter the Set community , which is the password for incoming Set requests from the management station. The default is private and allows all requests. |
| SNMPv3 | Select this to allow SNMP managers using SNMPv3 to access the Zyxel Device. |
| Add | Click this to create a new entry. Select an entry and click Add to create a new entry after the selected entry. |
| Edit | Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to be able to modify the entry's settings. |
| Remove | To remove an entry, select it and click Remove . The Zyxel Device confirms you want to remove it before doing so. Note that subsequent entries move up by one when you take this action. |
| # | This the index number of an SNMPv3 user profile. |
| User Name | This is the name of the user for which this SNMPv3 user profile is configured. |
| Authentication | This field displays the type of authentication the SNMPv3 user must use to connect to the Zyxel Device using this SNMPv3 user profile. |
| Privacy | This field displays the type of encryption the SNMPv3 user must use to connect to the Zyxel Device using this SNMPv3 user profile. |
| Privilege | This field displays whether the SNMPv3 user can have read-only or read and write access to the Zyxel Device using this SNMPv3 user profile. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

17.9.4 Adding or Editing an SNMPv3 User Profile

This screen allows you to add or edit an SNMPv3 user profile. To access this screen, click the **Configuration > System > SNMP** screen's **Add** button or select a SNMPv3 user profile from the list and click the **Edit** button.

Figure 123 Configuration > System > SNMP > Add

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add SNMPv3 User". It contains the following fields:

- User Name : admin
- Authentication: MD5
- Privacy: NONE
- Privilege: Read-Write

Buttons: OK, Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 87 Configuration > System > SNMP

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|---|
| User Name | Select the user name of the user account for which this SNMPv3 user profile is configured. |
| Authentication | Select the type of authentication the SNMPv3 user must use to connect to the Zyxel Device using this SNMPv3 user profile. Select MD5 to require the SNMPv3 user's password be encrypted by MD5 for authentication. Select SHA to require the SNMPv3 user's password be encrypted by SHA for authentication. |
| Privacy | Select the type of encryption the SNMPv3 user must use to connect to the Zyxel Device using this SNMPv3 user profile. Select NONE to not encrypt the SNMPv3 communications. Select DES to use DES to encrypt the SNMPv3 communications. Select AES to use AES to encrypt the SNMPv3 communications. |
| Privilege | Select whether the SNMPv3 user can have read-only or read and write access to the Zyxel Device using this SNMPv3 user profile. |
| OK | Click OK to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Cancel | Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving your changes. |

CHAPTER 18

Log and Report

18.1 Overview

Use the system screens to configure daily reporting and log settings.

18.1.1 What You Can Do In this Chapter

- The **Email Daily Report** screen ([Section 18.2 on page 196](#)) configures how and where to send daily reports and what reports to send.
- The **Log Setting** screens ([Section 18.3 on page 198](#)) specify which logs are e-mailed, where they are e-mailed, and how often they are e-mailed.

18.2 Email Daily Report

Use this screen to start or stop data collection and view various statistics about traffic passing through your Zyxel Device.

Note: Data collection may decrease the Zyxel Device's traffic throughput rate.

Click **Configuration > Log & Report > Email Daily Report** to display the following screen. Configure this screen to have the Zyxel Device e-mail you system statistics every day.

Figure 124 Configuration > Log & Report > Email Daily Report

Email Daily Report

General Settings

Enable Email Daily Report

Email Settings

Mail Server: (Outgoing SMTP Server Name or IP Address)

SSL/TLS Encryption: (dropdown)

Mail Server Port: (1-65535) (Optional)

Mail Subject:

Append system name

Append date time

Mail From: (Email Address)

Mail To: (Email Address)

(Email Address)

(Email Address)

(Email Address)

(Email Address)

SMTP Authentication

User Name:

Password:

Schedule

Time for sending report: (hours) (minutes)

Report Items

System Resource Usage

CPU Usage

Memory Usage

Port Usage

Wireless Report

Station Count

TX/RX Statistics

Reset counters after sending report successfully

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 88 Configuration > Log & Report > Email Daily Report

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|--|
| Enable Email Daily Report | Select this to send reports by e-mail every day. |
| Mail Server | Type the name or IP address of the outgoing SMTP server. |

Table 88 Configuration > Log & Report > Email Daily Report (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|--|
| SSL/TLS Encryption | Select SSL/TLS to use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS) if you want encrypted communications between the mail server and the Zyxel Device. Select STARTTLS to upgrade a plain text connection to a secure connection using SSL/TLS. Select No to not encrypt the communications. |
| Mail Server Port | Enter the same port number here as is on the mail server for mail traffic. |
| Mail Subject | Type the subject line for the outgoing e-mail. Select Append system name to add the Zyxel Device's system name to the subject. Select Append date time to add the Zyxel Device's system date and time to the subject. |
| Mail From | Type the e-mail address from which the outgoing e-mail is delivered. This address is used in replies. |
| Mail To | Type the e-mail address (or addresses) to which the outgoing e-mail is delivered. |
| SMTP Authentication | Select this check box if it is necessary to provide a user name and password to the SMTP server. |
| User Name | This box is effective when you select the SMTP Authentication check box. Type the user name to provide to the SMTP server when the log is e-mailed. |
| Password | This box is effective when you select the SMTP Authentication check box. Type the password to provide to the SMTP server when the log is e-mailed. |
| Send Report Now | Click this button to have the Zyxel Device send the daily e-mail report immediately. |
| Time for sending report | Select the time of day (hours and minutes) when the log is e-mailed. Use 24-hour notation. |
| Report Items | Select the information to include in the report. Select Reset counters after sending report successfully if you only want to see statistics for a 24 hour period. |
| Reset All Counters | Click this to discard all report data and start all of the counters over at zero. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

18.3 Log Setting

These screens control log messages and alerts. A log message stores the information for viewing (for example, in the **Monitor > View Log** screen) or regular e-mailing later, and an alert is e-mailed immediately. Usually, alerts are used for events that require more serious attention, such as system errors and attacks.

The Zyxel Device provides a system log and supports e-mail profiles and remote syslog servers. The system log is available on the **View Log** screen, the e-mail profiles are used to mail log messages to the specified destinations, and the other four logs are stored on specified syslog servers.

The **Log Setting** tab also controls what information is saved in each log. For the system log, you can also specify which log messages are e-mailed, where they are e-mailed, and how often they are e-mailed.

For alerts, the **Log Setting** screen controls which events generate alerts and where alerts are e-mailed.

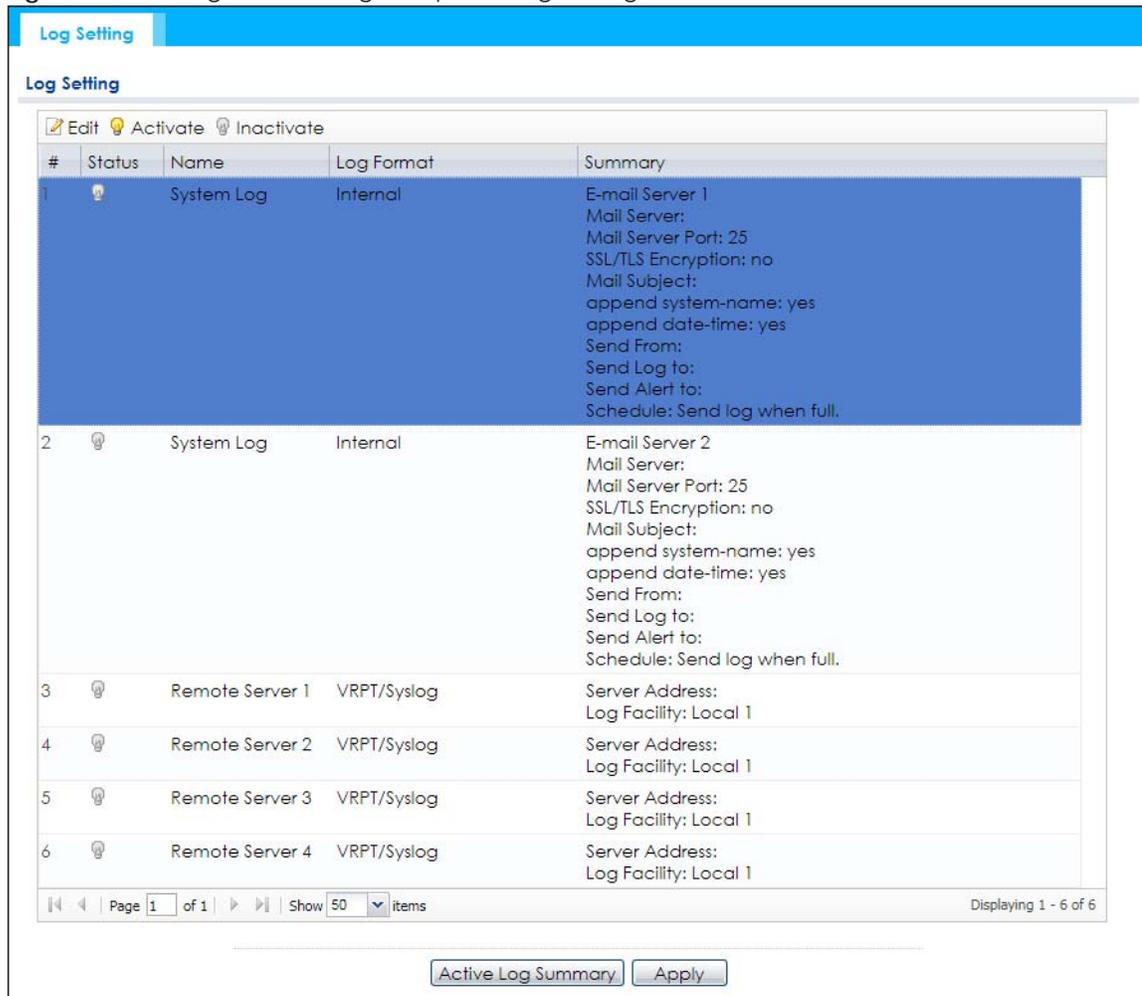
The **Log Setting** screen provides a summary of all the settings. You can use the **Edit Log Setting** screen to maintain the detailed settings (such as log categories, e-mail addresses, server names, etc.) for any log.

Alternatively, if you want to edit what events is included in each log, you can also use the **Active Log Summary** screen to edit this information for all logs at the same time.

18.3.1 Log Setting Screen

To access this screen, click **Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting**.

Figure 125 Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 89 Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|--|
| Edit | Double-click an entry or select it and click Edit to open a screen where you can modify the entry's settings. |
| Activate | To turn on an entry, select it and click Activate . |
| Inactivate | To turn off an entry, select it and click Inactivate . |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific log. |
| Status | This field shows whether the log is active or not. |
| Name | This field displays the name of the log (system log or one of the remote servers). |

Table 89 Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|--|
| Log Format | This field displays the format of the log. Internal - system log; you can view the log on the View Log tab. VRPT/Syslog - Zyxel's Vantage Report, syslog-compatible format. CEF/Syslog - Common Event Format, syslog-compatible format. |
| Summary | This field is a summary of the settings for each log. |
| Active Log Summary | Click this button to open the Active Log Summary screen. |
| Apply | Click this button to save your changes (activate and deactivate logs) and make them take effect. |

18.3.2 Edit System Log Settings

This screen controls the detailed settings for each log in the system log (which includes the e-mail profiles). Select a system log entry in the **Log Setting** screen and click the **Edit** icon.

Figure 126 Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting > Edit System Log Setting

E-mail Server 1

Active

Mail Server: (Outgoing SMTP Server Name or IP Address)

SSL/TLS Encryption: (v)

Mail Server Port: (1-65535) (Optional)

Mail Subject:

Append system name

Append date time

Send From: (E-Mail Address)

Send Log to: (E-Mail Address)

Send Alerts to: (E-Mail Address)

Sending Log: (v)

Day for Sending Log: (v)

Time for Sending Log: (c)

SMTP Authentication

User Name:

Password:

E-mail Server 2

Active

Mail Server: (Outgoing SMTP Server Name or IP Address)

SSL/TLS Encryption: (v)

Active Log and Alert

| # | Log Category | System Log | E-mail Server 1 | E-mail Server 2 |
|----|-----------------------|---|--|--|
| 1 | Account | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 | Bluetooth | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 | Built-In Service | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 | Connectivity Check | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 | Daily Report | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 | Default | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 | Device HA | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 | Dynamic Frequency ... | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9 | DHCP | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10 | File Manager | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 11 | Force Authentication | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 12 | Interface | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 13 | PKI | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 14 | System | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 15 | User | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 16 | Wireless LAN | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 17 | WLAN Band Select | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 18 | WLAN Dynamic Cha... | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 19 | AP Load Balancing | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 20 | WLAN Monitor Mode | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 21 | WLAN Rogue AP Def... | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 22 | Wlan Station Info | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 23 | Zyxel One Network | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 24 | ZyMesh | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 25 | ZySH | <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |

Page 1 of 1 | Show 50 items | Displaying 1 - 25 of 25

Log Consolidation

Active

Log Consolidation Interval: (10 - 600 seconds)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 90 Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting > Edit System Log Setting

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------|--|
| E-Mail Server 1/2 | |
| Active | Select this to send log messages and alerts according to the information in this section. You specify what kinds of log messages are included in log information and what kinds of log messages are included in alerts in the Active Log and Alert section. |
| Mail Server | Type the name or IP address of the outgoing SMTP server. |
| SSL/TLS Encryption | Select SSL/TLS to use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS) if you want encrypted communications between the mail server and the Zyxel Device. Select STARTTLS to upgrade a plain text connection to a secure connection using SSL/TLS. Select No to not encrypt the communications. |
| Mail Server Port | Enter the same port number here as is on the mail server for mail traffic. |
| Mail Subject | Type the subject line for the outgoing e-mail. Select Append system name to add the Zyxel Device's system name to the subject. Select Append date time to add the Zyxel Device's system date and time to the subject. |
| Send From | Type the e-mail address from which the outgoing e-mail is delivered. This address is used in replies. |
| Send Log To | Type the e-mail address to which the outgoing e-mail is delivered. |
| Send Alerts To | Type the e-mail address to which alerts are delivered. |
| Sending Log | Select how often log information is e-mailed. Choices are: When Full, Hourly and When Full, Daily and When Full , and Weekly and When Full . |
| Day for Sending Log | This field is available if the log is e-mailed weekly. Select the day of the week the log is e-mailed. |
| Time for Sending Log | This field is available if the log is e-mailed weekly or daily. Select the time of day (hours and minutes) when the log is e-mailed. Use 24-hour notation. |
| SMTP Authentication | Select this check box if it is necessary to provide a user name and password to the SMTP server. |
| User Name | This box is effective when you select the SMTP Authentication check box. Type the user name to provide to the SMTP server when the log is e-mailed. |
| Password | This box is effective when you select the SMTP Authentication check box. Type the password to provide to the SMTP server when the log is e-mailed. |
| Active Log and Alert | |
| System log | Use the System Log drop-down list to change the log settings for all of the log categories. disable all logs (red X) - do not log any information for any category for the system log or e-mail any logs to e-mail server 1 or 2. enable normal logs (green check mark) - create log messages and alerts for all categories for the system log. If e-mail server 1 or 2 also has normal logs enabled, the Zyxel Device will e-mail logs to them. enable normal logs and debug logs (yellow check mark) - create log messages, alerts, and debugging information for all categories. The Zyxel Device does not e-mail debugging information, even if this setting is selected. |

Table 90 Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting > Edit System Log Setting (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|---|
| E-mail Server 1 | <p>Use the E-Mail Server 1 drop-down list to change the settings for e-mailing logs to e-mail server 1 for all log categories.</p> <p>Using the System Log drop-down list to disable all logs overrides your e-mail server 1 settings.</p> <p>enable normal logs (green check mark) - e-mail log messages for all categories to e-mail server 1.</p> <p>enable alert logs (red exclamation point) - e-mail alerts for all categories to e-mail server 1.</p> |
| E-mail Server 2 | <p>Use the E-Mail Server 2 drop-down list to change the settings for e-mailing logs to e-mail server 2 for all log categories.</p> <p>Using the System Log drop-down list to disable all logs overrides your e-mail server 2 settings.</p> <p>enable normal logs (green check mark) - e-mail log messages for all categories to e-mail server 2.</p> <p>enable alert logs (red exclamation point) - e-mail alerts for all categories to e-mail server 2.</p> |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific address. |
| Log Category | This field displays each category of messages. It is the same value used in the Display and Category fields in the View Log tab. The Default category includes debugging messages generated by open source software. |
| System log | <p>Select which events you want to log by Log Category. There are three choices:</p> <p>disable all logs (red X) - do not log any information from this category</p> <p>enable normal logs (green checkmark) - create log messages and alerts from this category</p> <p>enable normal logs and debug logs (yellow check mark) - create log messages, alerts, and debugging information from this category; the Zyxel Device does not e-mail debugging information, however, even if this setting is selected.</p> |
| E-mail Server 1 | Select whether each category of events should be included in the log messages when it is e-mailed (green check mark) and/or in alerts (red exclamation point) for the e-mail settings specified in E-Mail Server 1 . The Zyxel Device does not e-mail debugging information, even if it is recorded in the System log . |
| E-mail Server 2 | Select whether each category of events should be included in log messages when it is e-mailed (green check mark) and/or in alerts (red exclamation point) for the e-mail settings specified in E-Mail Server 2 . The Zyxel Device does not e-mail debugging information, even if it is recorded in the System log . |
| Log Consolidation | |
| Active | Select this to activate log consolidation. Log consolidation aggregates multiple log messages that arrive within the specified Log Consolidation Interval . In the View Log tab, the text "[count=x]", where <i>x</i> is the number of original log messages, is appended at the end of the Message field, when multiple log messages were aggregated. |
| Log Consolidation Interval | Type how often, in seconds, to consolidate log information. If the same log message appears multiple times, it is aggregated into one log message with the text "[count=x]", where <i>x</i> is the number of original log messages, appended at the end of the Message field. |
| OK | Click this to save your changes and return to the previous screen. |
| Cancel | Click this to return to the previous screen without saving your changes. |

18.3.3 Edit Remote Server

This screen controls the settings for each log in the remote server (syslog). Select a remote server entry in the **Log Setting** screen and click the **Edit** icon.

Figure 127 Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting > Edit Remote Server

Log Settings for Remote Server

Active

Log Format: VRPT/Syslog

Server Address: (Server Name or IP Address)

Log Facility: Local 1

Active Log

| # | Log Category | Selection | | |
|----|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 | Account | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 2 | Bluetooth | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 3 | Built-in Service | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 4 | Connectivity Check | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 5 | Daily Report | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 6 | Default | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 7 | Device HA | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 8 | Dynamic Frequency Selection | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 9 | DHCP | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 10 | File Manager | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 11 | Force Authentication | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 12 | Interface | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 13 | Interface Statistics | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 14 | PKI | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 15 | System | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 16 | System Monitoring | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 17 | Traffic Log | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 18 | User | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 19 | Wireless LAN | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| 20 | WLAN Band Select | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |

Page 1 of 2 | Show 20 items | Displaying 1 - 20 of 28

OK Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

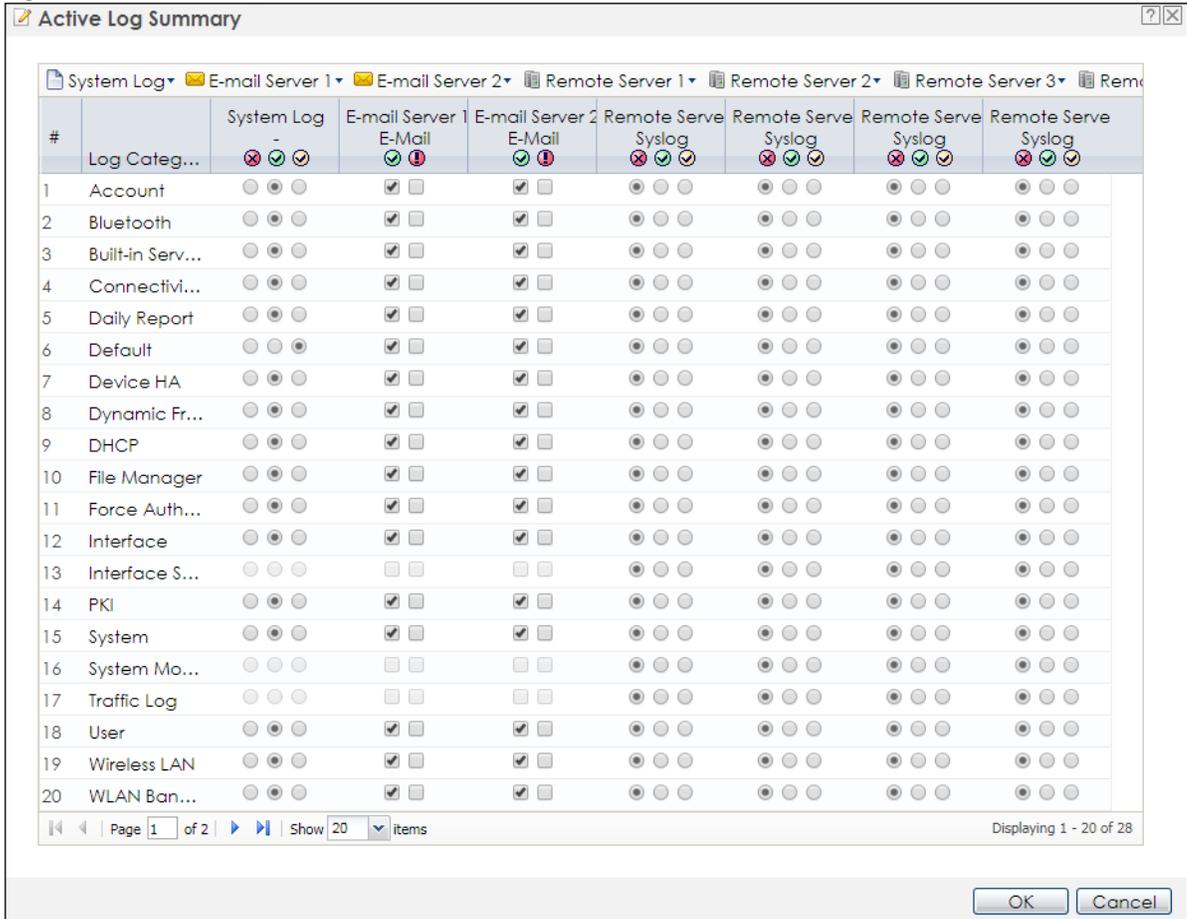
Table 91 Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting > Edit Remote Server

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Log Settings for Remote Server | |
| Active | Select this check box to send log information according to the information in this section. You specify what kinds of messages are included in log information in the Active Log section. |
| Log Format | This field displays the format of the log information. It is read-only. VRPT/Syslog - Zyxel's Vantage Report, syslog-compatible format. CEF/Syslog - Common Event Format, syslog-compatible format. |
| Server Address | Type the server name or the IP address of the syslog server to which to send log information. |
| Log Facility | Select a log facility. The log facility allows you to log the messages to different files in the syslog server. Please see the documentation for your syslog program for more information. |
| Active Log | |
| Selection | Use the Selection drop-down list to change the log settings for all of the log categories. disable all logs (red X) - do not send the remote server logs for any log category. enable normal logs (green check mark) - send the remote server log messages and alerts for all log categories. enable normal logs and debug logs (yellow check mark) - send the remote server log messages, alerts, and debugging information for all log categories. |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific address. |
| Log Category | This field displays each category of messages. It is the same value used in the Display and Category fields in the View Log tab. The Default category includes debugging messages generated by open source software. |
| Selection | Select what information you want to log from each Log Category (except All Logs ; see below). Choices are: disable all logs (red X) - do not log any information from this category enable normal logs (green checkmark) - log regular information and alerts from this category enable normal logs and debug logs (yellow check mark) - log regular information, alerts, and debugging information from this category |
| OK | Click this to save your changes and return to the previous screen. |
| Cancel | Click this to return to the previous screen without saving your changes. |

18.3.4 Active Log Summary

This screen allows you to view and to edit what information is included in the system log, e-mail profiles, and remote servers at the same time. It does not let you change other log settings (for example, where and how often log information is e-mailed or remote server names). To access this screen, go to the **Log Setting** screen, and click the **Active Log Summary** button.

Figure 128 Active Log Summary



This screen provides a different view and a different way of indicating which messages are included in each log and each alert. (The **Default** category includes debugging messages generated by open source software.)

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 92 Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting > Active Log Summary

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|--|
| Active Log Summary | If the Zyxel Device is set to controller mode, the AC section controls logs generated by the controller and the AP section controls logs generated by the managed APs. |
| System log | Use the System Log drop-down list to change the log settings for all of the log categories. disable all logs (red X) - do not log any information for any category for the system log or e-mail any logs to e-mail server 1 or 2. enable normal logs (green check mark) - create log messages and alerts for all categories for the system log. If e-mail server 1 or 2 also has normal logs enabled, the Zyxel Device will e-mail logs to them. enable normal logs and debug logs (yellow check mark) - create log messages, alerts, and debugging information for all categories. The Zyxel Device does not e-mail debugging information, even if this setting is selected. |

Table 92 Configuration > Log & Report > Log Setting > Active Log Summary (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| E-mail Server 1 | <p>Use the E-Mail Server 1 drop-down list to change the settings for e-mailing logs to e-mail server 1 for all log categories.</p> <p>Using the System Log drop-down list to disable all logs overrides your e-mail server 1 settings.</p> <p>enable normal logs (green check mark) - e-mail log messages for all categories to e-mail server 1.</p> <p>enable alert logs (red exclamation point) - e-mail alerts for all categories to e-mail server 1.</p> |
| E-mail Server 2 | <p>Use the E-Mail Server 2 drop-down list to change the settings for e-mailing logs to e-mail server 2 for all log categories.</p> <p>Using the System Log drop-down list to disable all logs overrides your e-mail server 2 settings.</p> <p>enable normal logs (green check mark) - e-mail log messages for all categories to e-mail server 2.</p> <p>enable alert logs (red exclamation point) - e-mail alerts for all categories to e-mail server 2.</p> |
| Remote Server 1~4 | <p>For each remote server, use the Selection drop-down list to change the log settings for all of the log categories.</p> <p>disable all logs (red X) - do not send the remote server logs for any log category.</p> <p>enable normal logs (green check mark) - send the remote server log messages and alerts for all log categories.</p> <p>enable normal logs and debug logs (yellow check mark) - send the remote server log messages, alerts, and debugging information for all log categories.</p> |
| # | This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific address. |
| Log Category | This field displays each category of messages. It is the same value used in the Display and Category fields in the View Log tab. The Default category includes debugging messages generated by open source software. |
| System log | <p>Select which events you want to log by Log Category. There are three choices:</p> <p>disable all logs (red X) - do not log any information from this category</p> <p>enable normal logs (green checkmark) - create log messages and alerts from this category</p> <p>enable normal logs and debug logs (yellow check mark) - create log messages, alerts, and debugging information from this category; the Zyxel Device does not e-mail debugging information, however, even if this setting is selected.</p> |
| E-mail Server 1 E-mail | Select whether each category of events should be included in the log messages when it is e-mailed (green check mark) and/or in alerts (red exclamation point) for the e-mail settings specified in E-Mail Server 1 . The Zyxel Device does not e-mail debugging information, even if it is recorded in the System log . |
| E-mail Server 2 E-mail | Select whether each category of events should be included in log messages when it is e-mailed (green check mark) and/or in alerts (red exclamation point) for the e-mail settings specified in E-Mail Server 2 . The Zyxel Device does not e-mail debugging information, even if it is recorded in the System log . |
| Remote Server 1~4 Syslog | <p>For each remote server, select what information you want to log from each Log Category (except All Logs; see below). Choices are:</p> <p>disable all logs (red X) - do not log any information from this category</p> <p>enable normal logs (green checkmark) - log regular information and alerts from this category</p> <p>enable normal logs and debug logs (yellow check mark) - log regular information, alerts, and debugging information from this category</p> |
| OK | Click this to save your changes and return to the previous screen. |
| Cancel | Click this to return to the previous screen without saving your changes. |

CHAPTER 19

File Manager

19.1 Overview

Configuration files define the Zyxel Device's settings. Shell scripts are files of commands that you can store on the Zyxel Device and run when you need them. You can apply a configuration file or run a shell script without the Zyxel Device restarting. You can store multiple configuration files and shell script files on the Zyxel Device. You can edit configuration files or shell scripts in a text editor and upload them to the Zyxel Device. Configuration files use a .conf extension and shell scripts use a .ysh extension.

19.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **Configuration File** screen (Section 19.2 on page 209) stores and names configuration files. You can also download and upload configuration files.
- The **Firmware Package** screen (Section 19.3 on page 214) checks your current firmware version and uploads firmware to the Zyxel Device.
- The **Shell Script** screen (Section 19.4 on page 216) stores, names, downloads, uploads and runs shell script files.

19.1.2 What you Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

Configuration Files and Shell Scripts

When you apply a configuration file, the Zyxel Device uses the factory default settings for any features that the configuration file does not include. When you run a shell script, the Zyxel Device only applies the commands that it contains. Other settings do not change.

These files have the same syntax, which is also identical to the way you run CLI commands manually. An example is shown below.

Figure 129 Configuration File / Shell Script: Example

```
# enter configuration mode
configure terminal
# change administrator password
username admin password 4321 user-type admin
#configure default radio profile, change 2GHz channel to 11 & Tx output
power # to 50%
wlan-radio-profile default
2g-channel 11
output-power 50%
exit
write
```

While configuration files and shell scripts have the same syntax, the Zyxel Device applies configuration files differently than it runs shell scripts. This is explained below.

Table 93 Configuration Files and Shell Scripts in the Zyxel Device

| Configuration Files (.conf) | Shell Scripts (.zysh) |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resets to default configuration. Goes into CLI Configuration mode. Runs the commands in the configuration file. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Goes into CLI Privilege mode. Runs the commands in the shell script. |

You have to run the aforementioned example as a shell script because the first command is run in **Privilege** mode. If you remove the first command, you have to run the example as a configuration file because the rest of the commands are executed in **Configuration** mode.

Comments in Configuration Files or Shell Scripts

In a configuration file or shell script, use “#” or “!” as the first character of a command line to have the Zyxel Device treat the line as a comment.

Your configuration files or shell scripts can use “exit” or a command line consisting of a single “!” to have the Zyxel Device exit sub command mode.

Note: “exit” or “!” must follow sub commands if it is to make the Zyxel Device exit sub command mode.

In the following example lines 1 and 2 are comments. Line 7 exits sub command mode.

```
! this is from Joe
# on 2010/12/05
wlan-ssid-profile default
ssid Joe-AP
qos wmm
security default
!
```

Errors in Configuration Files or Shell Scripts

When you apply a configuration file or run a shell script, the Zyxel Device processes the file line-by-line. The Zyxel Device checks the first line and applies the line if no errors are detected. Then it continues with the next line. If the Zyxel Device finds an error, it stops applying the configuration file or shell script and generates a log.

You can change the way a configuration file or shell script is applied. Include `setenv stop-on-error off` in the configuration file or shell script. The Zyxel Device ignores any errors in the configuration file or shell script and applies all of the valid commands. The Zyxel Device still generates a log for any errors.

19.2 Configuration File

Click **Maintenance > File Manager > Configuration File** to open this screen. Use the **Configuration File** screen to store, run, and name configuration files. You can also download configuration files from the Zyxel Device to your computer and upload configuration files from your computer to the Zyxel Device.

Once your Zyxel Device is configured and functioning properly, it is highly recommended that you back up your configuration file before making further configuration changes. The backup configuration file will be useful in case you need to return to your previous settings.

Configuration File Flow at Restart

- If there is not a **startup-config.conf** when you restart the Zyxel Device (whether through a management interface or by physically turning the power off and back on), the Zyxel Device uses the **system-default.conf** configuration file with the Zyxel Device's default settings.
- If there is a **startup-config.conf**, the Zyxel Device checks it for errors and applies it. If there are no errors, the Zyxel Device uses it and copies it to the **lastgood.conf** configuration file as a back up file. If there is an error, the Zyxel Device generates a log and copies the **startup-config.conf** configuration file to the **startup-config-bad.conf** configuration file and tries the existing **lastgood.conf** configuration file. If there isn't a **lastgood.conf** configuration file or it also has an error, the Zyxel Device applies the **system-default.conf** configuration file.
- You can change the way the **startup-config.conf** file is applied. Include the `setenv-startup stop-on-error off` command. The Zyxel Device ignores any errors in the **startup-config.conf** file and applies all of the valid commands. The Zyxel Device still generates a log for any errors.

Figure 130 Maintenance > File Manager > Configuration File

The screenshot displays the 'Configuration File' tab in the File Manager. At the top, there are three tabs: 'Configuration File' (selected), 'Firmware Package', and 'Shell Script'. Below the tabs, the 'Configuration Files' section shows a table with the following data:

| # | File Name | Size | Last Modified |
|---|-------------------------|------|---------------------|
| 1 | startup-config.conf | 4267 | 2019-07-29 16:35:42 |
| 2 | system-default.conf | 3985 | 2019-07-29 14:11:39 |
| 3 | startup-config-bad.conf | 3876 | 2019-07-29 14:13:39 |
| 4 | oldfwid | 5 | 2019-07-29 14:13:20 |
| 5 | lastgood-default.conf | 3985 | 2019-07-29 13:58:54 |
| 6 | lastgood.conf | 4267 | 2019-07-29 14:14:10 |
| 7 | autobackup-6.00.conf | 3876 | 2019-07-29 14:11:39 |

Below the table, there are navigation controls: 'Page 1 of 1', 'Show 50 items', and 'Displaying 1 - 7 of 7'. The 'Upload Configuration File' section contains the instruction: 'To upload a configuration file, browse to the location of the file (.conf) and then click Upload.' Below this is a 'File:' label, a text input field with the placeholder 'Select a file', a 'Browse...' button, and an 'Upload' button.

Do not turn off the Zyxel Device while configuration file upload is in progress.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 94 Maintenance > File Manager > Configuration File

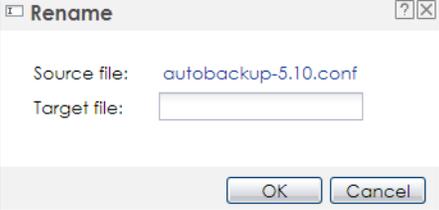
| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|--|
| Rename | <p>Use this button to change the label of a configuration file on the Zyxel Device. You can only rename manually saved configuration files. You cannot rename the lastgood.conf, system-default.conf and startup-config.conf files.</p> <p>You cannot rename a configuration file to the name of another configuration file in the Zyxel Device.</p> <p>Click a configuration file's row to select it and click Rename to open the Rename File screen.</p>  <p>Specify the new name for the configuration file. Use up to 25 characters (including a-zA-Z0-9;~!@#\$\$%^&()_+[]{}',.-).</p> <p>Click OK to save the duplicate or click Cancel to close the screen without saving a duplicate of the configuration file.</p> |
| Remove | <p>Click a configuration file's row to select it and click Remove to delete it from the Zyxel Device. You can only delete manually saved configuration files. You cannot delete the system-default.conf, startup-config.conf and lastgood.conf files.</p> <p>A pop-up window asks you to confirm that you want to delete the configuration file. Click OK to delete the configuration file or click Cancel to close the screen without deleting the configuration file.</p> |
| Download | <p>Click a configuration file's row to select it and click Download to save the configuration to your computer.</p> |
| Copy | <p>Use this button to save a duplicate of a configuration file on the Zyxel Device.</p> <p>Click a configuration file's row to select it and click Copy to open the Copy File screen.</p>  <p>Specify a name for the duplicate configuration file. Use up to 25 characters (including a-zA-Z0-9;~!@#\$\$%^&()_+[]{}',.-).</p> <p>Click OK to save the duplicate or click Cancel to close the screen without saving a duplicate of the configuration file.</p> |

Table 94 Maintenance > File Manager > Configuration File (continued)

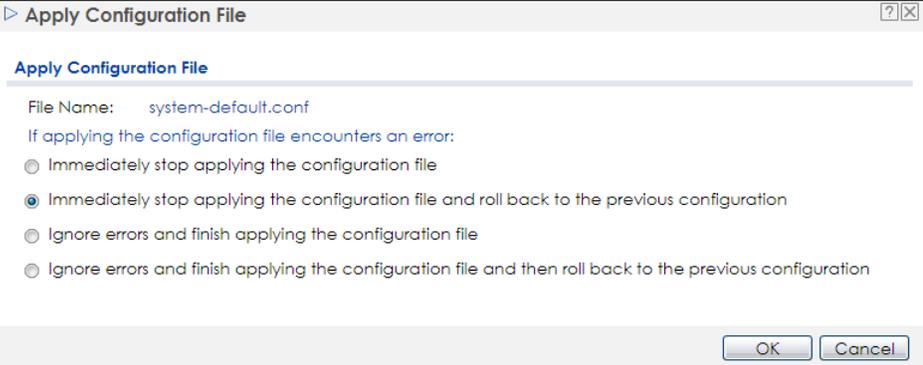
| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|--|
| Apply | <p>Use this button to have the Zyxel Device use a specific configuration file.</p> <p>Click a configuration file's row to select it and click Apply to have the Zyxel Device use that configuration file. The Zyxel Device does not have to restart in order to use a different configuration file, although you will need to wait for a few minutes while the system reconfigures.</p> <p>The following screen gives you options for what the Zyxel Device is to do if it encounters an error in the configuration file.</p>  <p>Immediately stop applying the configuration file - this is not recommended because it would leave the rest of the configuration blank. If the interfaces were not configured before the first error, the console port may be the only way to access the Zyxel Device.</p> <p>Immediately stop applying the configuration file and roll back to the previous configuration - this gets the Zyxel Device started with a fully valid configuration file as quickly as possible.</p> <p>Ignore errors and finish applying the configuration file - this applies the valid parts of the configuration file and generates error logs for all of the configuration file's errors. This lets the Zyxel Device apply most of your configuration and you can refer to the logs for what to fix.</p> <p>Ignore errors and finish applying the configuration file and then roll back to the previous configuration - this applies the valid parts of the configuration file, generates error logs for all of the configuration file's errors, and starts the Zyxel Device with a fully valid configuration file.</p> <p>Click OK to have the Zyxel Device start applying the configuration file or click Cancel to close the screen</p> |
| # | <p>This column displays the number for each configuration file entry. This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific address. The total number of configuration files that you can save depends on the sizes of the configuration files and the available flash storage space.</p> |
| File Name | <p>This column displays the label that identifies a configuration file.</p> <p>You cannot delete the following configuration files or change their file names.</p> <p>The system-default.conf file contains the Zyxel Device's default settings. Select this file and click Apply to reset all of the Zyxel Device settings to the factory defaults. This configuration file is included when you upload a firmware package.</p> <p>The startup-config.conf file is the configuration file that the Zyxel Device is currently using. If you make and save changes during your management session, the changes are applied to this configuration file. The Zyxel Device applies configuration changes made in the Web Configurator to the configuration file when you click Apply or OK. It applies configuration changes made via commands when you use the <code>write</code> command.</p> <p>The lastgood.conf is the most recently used (valid) configuration file that was saved when the Zyxel Device last restarted. If you upload and apply a configuration file with an error, you can apply <code>lastgood.conf</code> to return to a valid configuration.</p> |
| Size | <p>This column displays the size (in KB) of a configuration file.</p> |

Table 94 Maintenance > File Manager > Configuration File (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|---|
| Last Modified | This column displays the date and time that the individual configuration files were last changed or saved. |
| Upload Configuration File | <p>The bottom part of the screen allows you to upload a new or previously saved configuration file from your computer to your Zyxel Device</p> <p>You cannot upload a configuration file named system-default.conf or lastgood.conf.</p> <p>If you upload startup-config.conf, it will replace the current configuration and immediately apply the new settings.</p> |
| File Path | Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse... to find it. |
| Browse... | Click Browse... to find the .conf file you want to upload. The configuration file must use a ".conf" filename extension. You will receive an error message if you try to upload a file of a different format. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them. |
| Upload | Click Upload to begin the upload process. This process may take up to two minutes. |

19.2.1 Example of Configuration File Download Using FTP

The following example gets a configuration file named startup-config.conf from the Zyxel Device and saves it on the computer.

- 1 Connect your computer to the Zyxel Device.
- 2 The FTP server IP address of the Zyxel Device in standalone mode is 192.168.1.2, so set your computer to use a static IP address from 192.168.1.3 ~192.168.1.254.
- 3 Use an FTP client on your computer to connect to the Zyxel Device. For example, in the Windows command prompt, type `ftp 192.168.1.2`. Keep the console session connected in order to see when the firmware recovery finishes.
- 4 Enter your user name when prompted.
- 5 Enter your password as requested.
- 6 Use "cd" to change to the directory that contains the files you want to download.
- 7 Use "dir" or "ls" if you need to display a list of the files in the directory.
- 8 Use "get" to download files. Transfer the configuration file on the Zyxel Device to your computer. Type `get` followed by the name of the configuration file. This examples uses `get startup-config.conf`.

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
220----- Welcome to Pure-FTPd [privsep] [TLS] -----
220-You are user number 1 of 5 allowed.
220-Local time is now 21:28. Server port: 21.
220-This is a private system - No anonymous login
220 You will be disconnected after 600 minutes of inactivity.
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 User admin OK. Password required
Password:
230 OK. Current restricted directory is /
ftp> cd conf
250 OK. Current directory is /conf
ftp> ls
200 PORT command successful
150 Connecting to port 5001
lastgood.conf
startup-config.conf
system-default.conf
226 3 matches total
ftp: 57 bytes received in 0.33Seconds 0.17Kbytes/sec.
ftp> get startup-config.conf
200 PORT command successful
150 Connecting to port 5002
226-File successfully transferred
226 0.002 seconds (measured here), 1.66 Mbytes per second
ftp: 2928 bytes received in 0.02Seconds 183.00Kbytes/sec.
ftp>
```

- 9 Wait for the file transfer to complete.
- 10 Enter "quit" to exit the ftp prompt.

19.3 Firmware Package

Click **Maintenance > File Manager > Firmware Package** to open this screen. Use the **Firmware Package** screen to check your current firmware version and upload firmware to the Zyxel Device.

Note: The Web Configurator is the recommended method for uploading firmware. You only need to use the command line interface if you need to recover the firmware. See the CLI Reference Guide for how to determine if you need to recover the firmware and how to recover it.

Find the firmware package at www.zyxel.com in a file that (usually) uses a .bin extension.

The firmware update can take up to five minutes. Do not turn off or reset the Zyxel Device while the firmware update is in progress!

Figure 131 Maintenance > File Manager > Firmware Package

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 95 Maintenance > File Manager > Firmware Package

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|--|
| Boot Module | This is the version of the boot module that is currently on the Zyxel Device. |
| Current Version | This is the firmware version and the date created. |
| Released Date | This is the date that the version of the firmware was created. |
| File Path | Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse... to find it. |
| Browse... | Click Browse... to find the .bin file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them. |
| Upload | Click Upload to begin the upload process. This process may take up to two minutes. |

After you see the **Firmware Upload in Process** screen, wait two minutes before logging into the Zyxel Device again.

Note: The Zyxel Device automatically reboots after a successful upload.

The Zyxel Device automatically restarts causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

Figure 132 Network Temporarily Disconnected

After five minutes, log in again and check your new firmware version in the **Dashboard** screen.

19.3.1 Example of Firmware Upload Using FTP

This procedure requires the Zyxel Device's firmware. Download the firmware package from www.zyxel.com and unzip it. The firmware file uses a .bin extension, for example, "[600ABFH0C0](#).bin". Do the following after you have obtained the firmware file.

- 1 Connect your computer to the Zyxel Device.
- 2 The FTP server IP address of the Zyxel Device in standalone mode is 192.168.1.2, so set your computer to use a static IP address from 192.168.1.3 ~192.168.1.254.

- 3 Use an FTP client on your computer to connect to the Zyxel Device. For example, in the Windows command prompt, type `ftp 192.168.1.2`. Keep the console session connected in order to see when the firmware recovery finishes.
- 4 Enter your user name when prompted.
- 5 Enter your password as requested.
- 6 Enter "hash" for FTP to print a '#' character for every 1024 bytes of data you upload so that you can watch the file transfer progress.
- 7 Enter "bin" to set the transfer mode to binary.
- 8 Transfer the firmware file from your computer to the Zyxel Device. Type `put` followed by the path and name of the firmware file. This examples uses `put C:\ftproot\Zyxel Device_FW\600ABFH0C0.bin`.

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
220----- Welcome to Pure-FTPD [privsep] [TLS] -----
220-You are user number 1 of 5 allowed.
220-Local time is now 21:28. Server port: 21.
220-This is a private system - No anonymous login
220 You will be disconnected after 600 minutes of inactivity.
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 User admin OK. Password required
Password:
230 OK. Current restricted directory is /
ftp> hash
Hash mark printing On ftp: (2048 bytes/hash mark) .
ftp> bin
200 TYPE is now 8-bit binary
ftp> put C:\ftproot\Zyxel Device_FW\600ABFH0C0.bin
```

- 9 Wait for the file transfer to complete.
- 10 Enter "quit" to exit the ftp prompt.

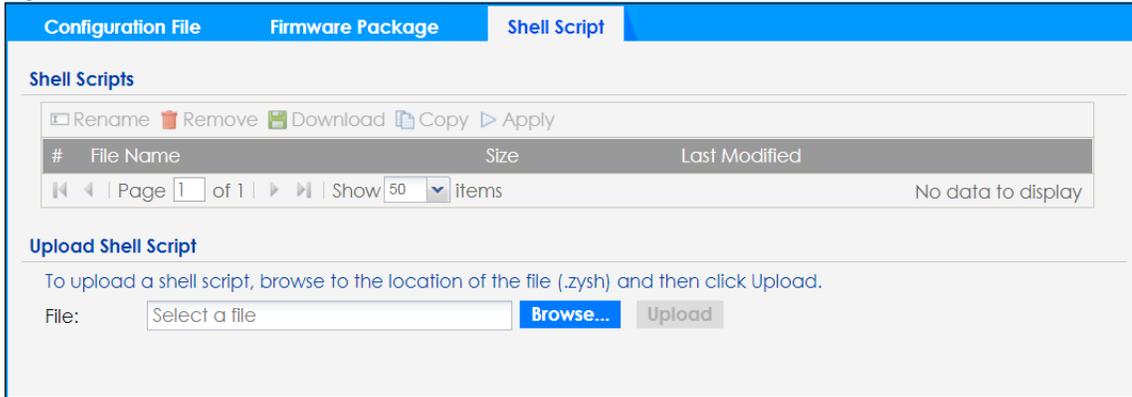
19.4 Shell Script

Use shell script files to have the Zyxel Device use commands that you specify. Use a text editor to create the shell script files. They must use a ".zysh" filename extension.

Click **Maintenance > File Manager > Shell Script** to open this screen. Use the **Shell Script** screen to store, name, download, upload and run shell script files. You can store multiple shell script files on the Zyxel Device at the same time.

Note: You should include `write` commands in your scripts. If you do not use the `write` command, the changes will be lost when the Zyxel Device restarts. You could use multiple `write` commands in a long script.

Figure 133 Maintenance > File Manager > Shell Script



Each field is described in the following table.

Table 96 Maintenance > File Manager > Shell Script

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------|--|
| Rename | <p>Use this button to change the label of a shell script file on the Zyxel Device.</p> <p>You cannot rename a shell script to the name of another shell script in the Zyxel Device.</p> <p>Click a shell script's row to select it and click Rename to open the Rename File screen.</p> <p>Specify the new name for the shell script file. Use up to 25 characters (including a-zA-Z0-9;~!@#\$\$%^&()+_+[]{}',.=).).</p> <p>Click OK to save the duplicate or click Cancel to close the screen without saving a duplicate of the configuration file.</p> |
| Remove | <p>Click a shell script file's row to select it and click Delete to delete the shell script file from the Zyxel Device.</p> <p>A pop-up window asks you to confirm that you want to delete the shell script file. Click OK to delete the shell script file or click Cancel to close the screen without deleting the shell script file.</p> |
| Download | <p>Click a shell script file's row to select it and click Download to save the configuration to your computer.</p> |
| Copy | <p>Use this button to save a duplicate of a shell script file on the Zyxel Device.</p> <p>Click a shell script file's row to select it and click Copy to open the Copy File screen.</p> <p>Specify a name for the duplicate file. Use up to 25 characters (including a-zA-Z0-9;~!@#\$\$%^&()+_+[]{}',.=).).</p> <p>Click OK to save the duplicate or click Cancel to close the screen without saving a duplicate of the configuration file.</p> |
| Apply | <p>Use this button to have the Zyxel Device use a specific shell script file.</p> <p>Click a shell script file's row to select it and click Apply to have the Zyxel Device use that shell script file. You may need to wait awhile for the Zyxel Device to finish applying the commands.</p> |
| # | This column displays the number for each shell script file entry. |
| File Name | This column displays the label that identifies a shell script file. |
| Size | This column displays the size (in KB) of a shell script file. |
| Last Modified | This column displays the date and time that the individual shell script files were last changed or saved. |
| Upload Shell Script | The bottom part of the screen allows you to upload a new or previously saved shell script file from your computer to your Zyxel Device. |
| File Path | Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse... to find it. |

Table 96 Maintenance > File Manager > Shell Script (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|---|
| Browse... | Click Browse... to find the .zysh file you want to upload. |
| Upload | Click Upload to begin the upload process. This process may take up to several minutes. |

CHAPTER 20

Diagnostics

20.1 Overview

Use the diagnostics screen for troubleshooting.

20.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

The **Diagnostics** screen (Section 20.2 on page 219) generates a file containing the Zyxel Device's configuration and diagnostic information if you need to provide it to customer support during troubleshooting.

20.2 Diagnostics

This screen provides an easy way for you to generate a file containing the Zyxel Device's configuration and diagnostic information. You may need to generate this file and send it to customer support during troubleshooting.

Click **Maintenance > Diagnostics** to open the **Diagnostic** screen.

Figure 134 Maintenance > Diagnostics

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 97 Maintenance > Diagnostics

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Filename | This is the name of the most recently created diagnostic file. |
| Last modified | This is the date and time that the last diagnostic file was created. The format is yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss. |
| Size | This is the size of the most recently created diagnostic file. |
| Diagnostic Collect Category | This field displays each category of settings. Select which categories you want the Zyxel Device to include in the diagnostic file. |
| Customized | Select this option to obtain the diagnostic information for configuration which is not included in a pre-defined category. |
| Script | If you select the Customized option, select a shell script file from the drop-down list. You can upload a new shell script file using the Maintenance > File Manager > Shell Script screen. |
| Collect Now | Click this to have the Zyxel Device create a new diagnostic file. |
| Download | Click this to save the most recent diagnostic file to a computer. |

CHAPTER 21

LEDs

21.1 Overview

The LEDs of your Zyxel Device can be controlled such that they stay lit (ON) or OFF after the Zyxel Device is ready. There are two features that control the LEDs of your Zyxel Device - **Locator** and **Suppression** (see [Section 1.4 on page 19](#)).

21.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **Suppression** screen ([Section 21.2 on page 221](#)) allows you to set how you want the LEDs to behave after the Zyxel Device is ready.
- The **Locator** screen ([Section 21.3 on page 222](#)) allows users to see the actual location of the Zyxel Device between several devices in the network.

21.2 Suppression Screen

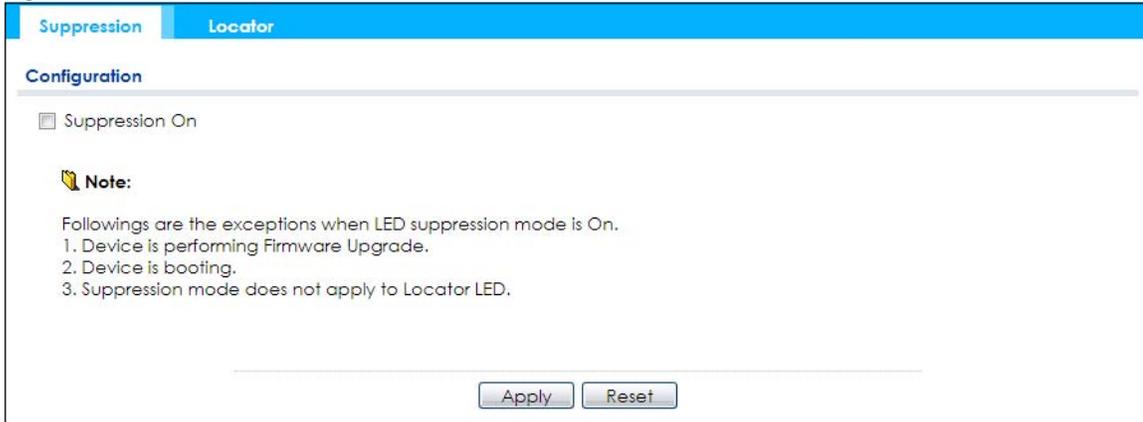
The LED Suppression feature allows you to control how the LEDs of your Zyxel Device behave after it's ready. The default LED suppression setting of your AP is different depending on your Zyxel Device model.

You can go to the **Maintenance > LEDs > Suppression** screen to see the default LED behavior and change the LED suppression setting. After you make changes in the suppression screen, it will be stored as the default when the Zyxel Device is restarted. See ([Section 3.2 on page 34](#)) for information on default values for different models.

Note: When the Zyxel Device is booting or performing firmware upgrade, the LEDs will light up regardless of the setting in LED suppression.

To access this screen, click **Maintenance > LEDs > Suppression**.

Figure 135 Maintenance > LEDs > Suppression



The following table describes fields in the above screen.

Table 98 Maintenance > LED > Suppression

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|--|
| Suppression On | If the Suppression On check box is checked, the LEDs of your Zyxel Device will turn off after it's ready. If the check box is unchecked, the LEDs will stay lit after the Zyxel Device is ready. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device. |
| Reset | Click Reset to return the screen to its last-saved settings. |

21.3 Locator Screen

The Locator feature identifies the location of your Zyxel Device among several devices in the network. You can run this feature and set a timer in this screen.

To run the locator feature, enter a number of minutes and click **Turn On** button to have the Zyxel Device find its location. The Locator LED will start to blink for the number of minutes set in the **Locator** screen. The default setting is 10 minutes. While the locator is running, the turn on button will gray out and return after it's finished. If you make changes to the time default setting, it will be stored as the default when the Zyxel Device restarts.

Note: The Locator feature is not affected by the Suppression setting.

To access this screen, click **Maintenance > LEDs > Locator**.

Figure 136 Maintenance > LEDs > Locator

The following table describes fields in the above screen.

Table 99 Maintenance > LED > Locator

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Turn On Turn Off | Click Turn On button to activate the locator. The Locator function will show the actual location of the Zyxel Device between several devices in the network. Otherwise, click Turn Off to disable the locator feature. |
| Automatically Extinguish After | Enter a time interval between 1 and 60 minutes to stop the locator LED from blinking. Default is 10 minutes. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save changes in this screen. |
| Refresh | Click Refresh to update the information in this screen. |

CHAPTER 22

Antenna Switch

22.1 Overview

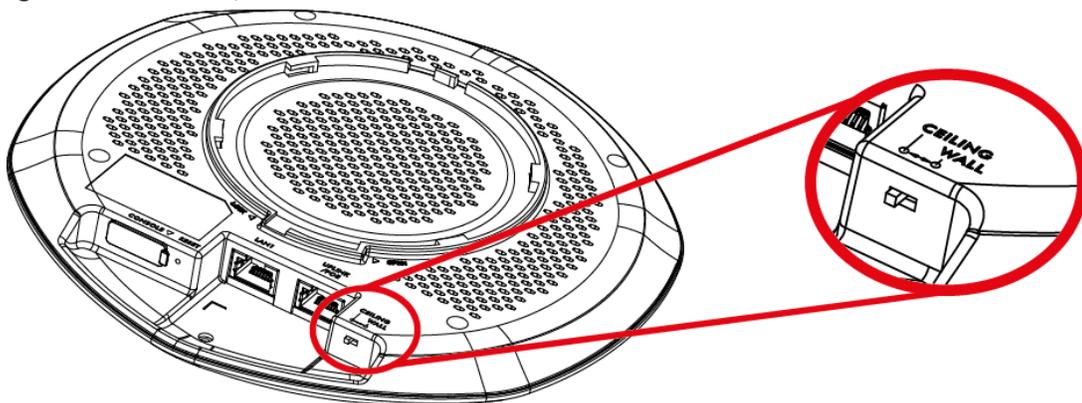
Use this screen to adjust coverage depending on the orientation of the antenna.

22.1.1 What You Need To Know

Positioning the antennas properly increases the range and coverage area of a wireless LAN.

On the Zyxel Device that comes with internal antennas and also has an antenna switch, you can adjust coverage depending on the orientation of the antenna for the Zyxel Device radios using the web configurator, the command line interface (CLI) or a physical switch. Check [Section 1.1 on page 13](#) to see if your Zyxel Device has an antenna switch.

Figure 137 WAC Physical Antenna Switch



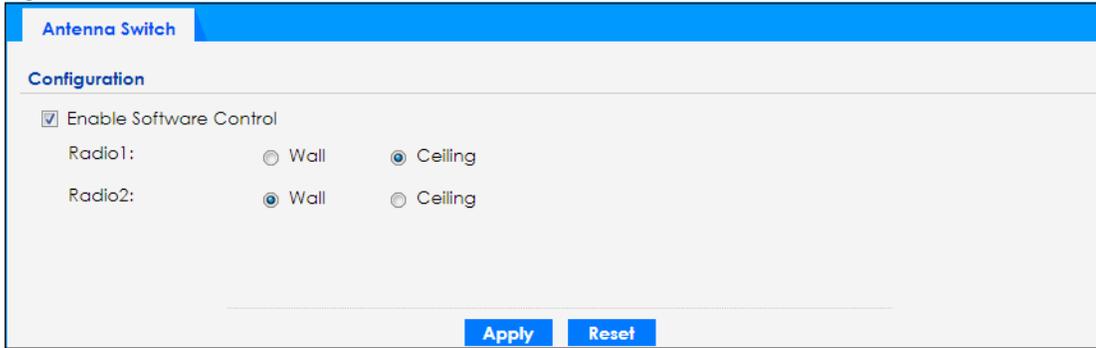
Note: With the physical antenna switch, you apply the same antenna orientation settings to both radios. You can set the radios to have different settings while using the web configurator or the command line interface.

Note: The antenna switch in the web configurator has priority over the physical antenna switch after you **Enable Software Control** in the **Maintenance > Antenna** screen. By default, software control is disabled.

22.2 Antenna Switch Screen

To access this screen, click **Maintenance > Antenna**.

Figure 138 Maintenance > Antenna > Antenna Switch



The screenshot shows a web configuration page for the Antenna Switch. At the top, there is a blue header bar with the text "Antenna Switch". Below the header, the page is titled "Configuration". Under this title, there is a checked checkbox labeled "Enable Software Control". Below this checkbox, there are two rows of radio button options. The first row is labeled "Radio1:" and has two options: "Wall" (unselected) and "Ceiling" (selected). The second row is labeled "Radio2:" and has two options: "Wall" (selected) and "Ceiling" (unselected). At the bottom of the configuration area, there are two blue buttons: "Apply" and "Reset".

Select the **Enable Software Control** option to use the Web configurator to adjust coverage depending on each radio's antenna orientation for better coverage. Select **Wall** if you mount the Zyxel Device to a wall. Select **Ceiling** if the Zyxel Device is mounted on a ceiling. You can switch from **Wall** to **Ceiling** if there are still wireless dead zones, and vice versa.

CHAPTER 23

Reboot

23.1 Overview

Use this screen to restart the Zyxel Device.

23.1.1 What You Need To Know

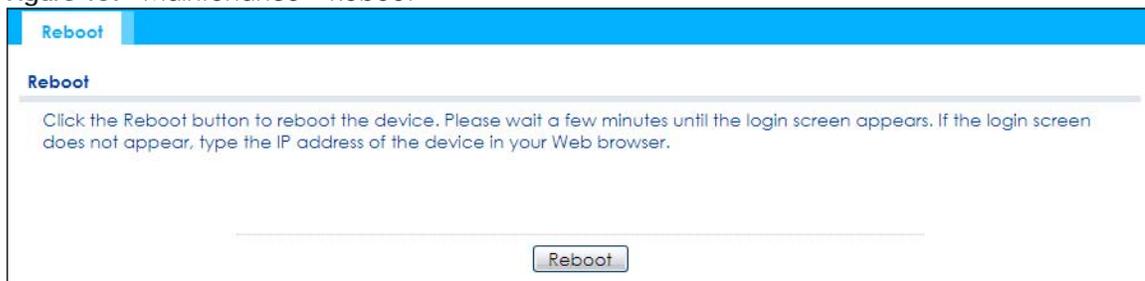
If you applied changes in the Web configurator, these were saved automatically and do not change when you reboot. If you made changes in the CLI, however, you have to use the `write` command to save the configuration before you reboot. Otherwise, the changes are lost when you reboot.

Reboot is different to reset; reset returns the Zyxel Device to its default configuration.

23.2 Reboot

This screen allows remote users can restart the Zyxel Device. To access this screen, click **Maintenance > Reboot**.

Figure 139 Maintenance > Reboot



Click the **Reboot** button to restart the Zyxel Device. Wait a few minutes until the login screen appears. If the login screen does not appear, type the IP address of the Zyxel Device in your Web browser.

You can also use the CLI command `reboot` to restart the Zyxel Device.

CHAPTER 24

Shutdown

24.1 Overview

Use this screen to shut down the Zyxel Device.

Always use Maintenance > Shutdown > Shutdown or the `shutdown` command before you turn off the Zyxel Device or remove the power. Not doing so can cause the firmware to become corrupt.

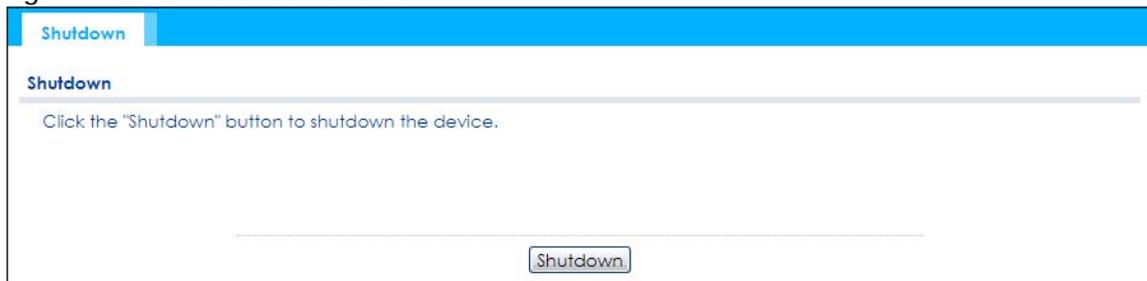
24.1.1 What You Need To Know

Shutdown writes all cached data to the local storage and stops the system processes. Shutdown is different to reset; reset returns the Zyxel Device to its default configuration.

24.2 Shutdown

To access this screen, click **Maintenance > Shutdown**.

Figure 140 Maintenance > Shutdown



Click the **Shutdown** button to shut down the Zyxel Device. Wait for the Zyxel Device to shut down before you manually turn off or remove the power. It does not turn off the power.

You can also use the CLI command `shutdown` to shut down the Zyxel Device.